

Physical Principles  
of Electron Microscopy

---

Ray F. Egerton

---

# Physical Principles of Electron Microscopy

An Introduction to TEM, SEM, and AEM

With 122 Figures

 Springer

Ray F. Egerton  
Department of Physics, University of Alberta  
412 Avadh Bhatia Physics Laboratory  
Edmonton, Alberta, Canada  
T6G 2R3

Library of Congress Control Number: 2005924717

ISBN-10: 0-387-25800-0      Printed on acid-free paper.  
ISBN-13: 978-0387-25800-0

© 2005 Springer Science+Business Media, Inc.

All rights reserved. This work may not be translated or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher (Springer Science+Business Media, Inc., 233 Spring St., New York, NY 10013, USA), except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden.

The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

Printed in the United States of America.      (EB)

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

springeronline.com

***To Maia***

# Contents

Preface	xi
1. An Introduction to Microscopy	1
1.1 Limitations of the Human Eye	2
1.2 The Light-Optical Microscope	5
1.3 The X-ray Microscope	9
1.4 The Transmission Electron Microscope	11
1.5 The Scanning Electron Microscope	17
1.6 Scanning Transmission Electron Microscope	19
1.7 Analytical Electron Microscopy	21
1.8 Scanning-Probe Microscopes	21
2. Electron Optics	27
2.1 Properties of an Ideal Image	27
2.2 Imaging in Light Optics	30
2.3 Imaging with Electrons	34
2.4 Focusing Properties of a Thin Magnetic Lens	41
2.5 Comparison of Magnetic and Electrostatic Lenses	43
2.6 Defects of Electron Lenses	44
3. The Transmission Electron Microscope	57
3.1 The Electron Gun	58
3.2 Electron Acceleration	67

3.3	Condenser-Lens System	70
3.4	The Specimen Stage	75
3.5	TEM Imaging System	78
3.6	Vacuum System	88
4.	TEM Specimens and Images	93
4.1	Kinematics of Scattering by an Atomic Nucleus	94
4.2	Electron-Electron Scattering	96
4.3	The Dynamics of Scattering	97
4.4	Scattering Contrast from Amorphous Specimens	101
4.5	Diffraction Contrast from Polycrystalline Specimens	106
4.6	Dark-Field Images	108
4.7	Electron-Diffraction Patterns	108
4.8	Diffraction Contrast within a Single Crystal	112
4.9	Phase Contrast in the TEM	115
4.10	TEM Specimen Preparation	119
5.	The Scanning Electron Microscope	125
5.1	Operating Principle of the SEM	125
5.2	Penetration of Electrons into a Solid	129
5.3	Secondary-Electron Images	131
5.4	Backscattered-Electron Images	137
5.5	Other SEM Imaging Modes	139
5.6	SEM Operating Conditions	143
5.7	SEM Specimen Preparation	147
5.8	The Environmental SEM	149
5.9	Electron-Beam Lithography	151
6.	Analytical Electron Microscopy	155
6.1	The Bohr Model of the Atom	155
6.2	X-ray Emission Spectroscopy	158
6.3	X-Ray Energy-Dispersive Spectroscopy	161
6.4	Quantitative Analysis in the TEM	165
6.5	Quantitative Analysis in the SEM	167
6.6	X-Ray Wavelength-Dispersive Spectroscopy	167
6.7	Comparison of XEDS and XWDS Analysis	169
6.8	Auger Electron Spectroscopy	171
6.9	Electron Energy-Loss Spectroscopy	172

7. Recent Developments	177
7.1 Scanning Transmission Electron Microscopy	177
7.2 Aberration Correction	180
7.3 Electron-Beam Monochromators	182
7.4 Electron Holography	184
7.5 Time-Resolved Microscopy	188
Appendix: Mathematical Derivations	191
A.1 The Schottky Effect	191
A.2 Impact Parameter in Rutherford Scattering	193
References	195
Index	197

## PREFACE

The telescope transformed our view of the universe, leading to cosmological theories that derive support from experiments involving elementary particles. But microscopes have been equally important, by helping us to understand both inanimate matter and living objects at *their* elementary level. Initially, these instruments relied on the focusing of visible light, but within the past 50 years other forms of radiation have been used. Of these, electrons have arguably been the most successful, by providing us with direct images down to the atomic level.

The purpose of this book is to introduce concepts of electron microscopy and to explain some of the basic physics involved at an undergraduate level. It originates from a one-semester course at the University of Alberta, designed to show how the principles of electricity and magnetism, optics and modern physics (learned in first or second year) have been used to develop instruments that have wide application in science, medicine and engineering. Finding a textbook for the course has always been a problem; most electron microscopy books overwhelm a non-specialist student, or else they concentrate on practical skills rather than fundamental principles. Over the years, this course became one of the most popular of our “general interest” courses offered to non-honors students. It would be nice to think that the availability of this book might facilitate the introduction of similar courses at other institutions.

At the time of writing, electron microscopy is being used routinely in the semiconductor industry to examine devices of sub-micrometer dimensions. Nanotechnology also makes use of electron beams, both for characterization and fabrication. Perhaps a book on the basics of TEM and SEM will benefit the engineers and scientists who use these tools. The more advanced student or professional electron microscopist is already well served by existing



textbooks, such as Williams and Carter (1996) and the excellent Springer books by Reimer. Even so, I hope that some of my research colleagues may find the current book to be a useful supplement to their collection.

My aim has been to teach general concepts, such as how a magnetic lens focuses electrons, without getting into too much detail – as would be needed to actually design a magnetic lens. Because electron microscopy is interdisciplinary, both in technique and application, the physical principles being discussed involve not only physics but also aspects of chemistry, electronics, and spectroscopy. I have included a short final chapter outlining some recent or more advanced techniques, to illustrate the fact that electron microscopy is a “living” subject that is still undergoing development.

Although the text contains equations, the mathematics is restricted to simple algebra, trigonometry, and calculus. SI units are utilized throughout. I have used *italics* for emphasis and **bold** characters to mark technical terms when they first appear. On a philosophical note: although wave mechanics has proved invaluable for accurately calculating the properties of electrons, classical physics provides a more intuitive description at an elementary level. Except with regard to diffraction effects, I have assumed the electron to be a particle, even when treating “phase contrast” images. I hope Einstein would approve.

To reduce publishing costs, the manuscript was prepared as camera-ready copy. I am indebted to several colleagues for proofreading and suggesting changes to the text; in particular, Drs. Marek Malac, Al Meldrum, Robert Wolkow, and Rodney Herring, and graduate students Julie Qian, Peng Li, and Feng Wang.

*Ray Egerton*  
University of Alberta  
Edmonton, Canada  
regerton@ualberta.ca

January 2005

# Chapter 1

## AN INTRODUCTION TO MICROSCOPY

Microscopy involves the study of objects that are too small to be examined by the unaided eye. In the SI (metric) system of units, the sizes of these objects are expressed in terms of sub-multiples of the meter, such as the **micrometer** ( $1 \mu\text{m} = 10^{-6} \text{ m}$ , also called a *micron*) and also the **nanometer** ( $1 \text{ nm} = 10^{-9} \text{ m}$ ). Older books use the Angstrom unit ( $1 \text{ \AA} = 10^{-10} \text{ m}$ ), not an official SI unit but convenient for specifying the distance between atoms in a solid, which is generally in the range  $2 - 3 \text{ \AA}$ .

To describe the wavelength of fast-moving electrons or their behavior inside an atom, we need even smaller units. Later in this book, we will make use of the **picometer** ( $1 \text{ pm} = 10^{-12} \text{ m}$ ).

The diameters of several small objects of scientific or general interest are listed in Table 1-1, together with their approximate dimensions.

*Table 1-1.* Approximate sizes of some common objects and the smallest magnification  $M^*$  required to distinguish them, according to Eq. (1.5).

Object	Typical diameter $D$	$M^* = 75\mu\text{m} / D$
Grain of sand	$1 \text{ mm} = 1000 \mu\text{m}$	None
Human hair	$150 \mu\text{m}$	None
Red blood cell	$10 \mu\text{m}$	7.5
Bacterium	$1 \mu\text{m}$	75
Virus	$20 \text{ nm}$	4000
DNA molecule	$2 \text{ nm}$	40,000
Uranium atom	$0.2 \text{ nm} = 200 \text{ pm}$	400,000

## 1.1 Limitations of the Human Eye

Our concepts of the physical world are largely determined by what we *see* around us. For most of recorded history, this has meant observation using the human eye, which is sensitive to radiation within the **visible region** of the electromagnetic spectrum, meaning wavelengths in the range 300 – 700 nm. The eyeball contains a fluid whose refractive index ( $n \approx 1.34$ ) is substantially different from that of air ( $n \approx 1$ ). As a result, most of the refraction and focusing of the incoming light occurs at the eye's curved front surface, the **cornea**; see Fig. 1-1.

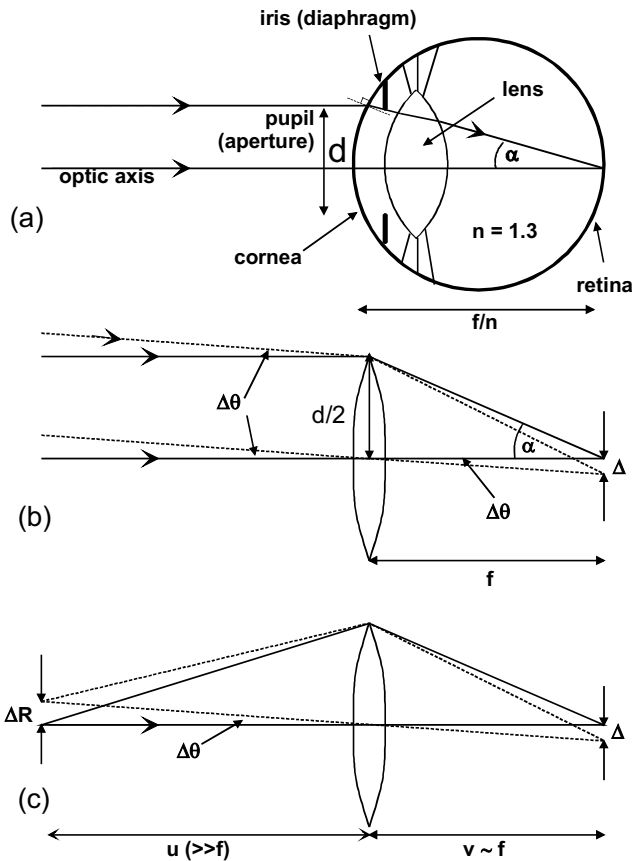


Figure 1-1. (a) A physicist's conception of the human eye, showing two light rays focused to a single point on the retina. (b) Equivalent thin-lens ray diagram for a *distant* object, showing *parallel* light rays arriving from opposite ends (solid and dashed lines) of the object and forming an image (in air) at a distance  $f$  (the focal length) from the thin lens. (c) Ray diagram for a *nearby* object (object distance  $u = 25$  cm, image distance  $v$  slightly less than  $f$ ).

In order to focus on objects located at *different* distances (referred to as **accommodation**), the eye incorporates an elastically deformable **lens** of slightly higher refractive index ( $n \sim 1.44$ ) whose shape and focusing power are controlled by eye muscles. Together, the cornea and lens of the eye behave like a single glass lens of variable focal length, forming a **real image** on the curved **retina** at the back of the eyeball. The retina contains photosensitive **receptor** cells that send electrochemical signals to the brain, the strength of each signal representing the local intensity in the image. However, the photochemical processes in the receptor cells work over a limited range of image intensity, therefore the eye controls the amount of light reaching the retina by varying the diameter  $d$  (over a range 2 – 8 mm) of the **aperture** of the eye, also known as the **pupil**. This aperture takes the form of a circular hole in the **diaphragm** (or **iris**), an opaque disk located between the lens and the cornea, as shown in Fig. 1-1.

The **spatial resolution** of the retinal image, which determines how *small* an object can be and still be separately identified from an adjacent and similar object, is determined by three factors: the size of the receptor cells, imperfections in the focusing (known as **aberrations**), and **diffraction** of light at the entrance pupil of the eye. Diffraction cannot be explained using a particle view of light (geometrical or ray optics); it requires a wave interpretation (physical optics), according to which any image is actually an interference pattern formed by light rays that take different paths to reach the same point in the image. In the simple situation that is depicted in Fig. 1-2 , a

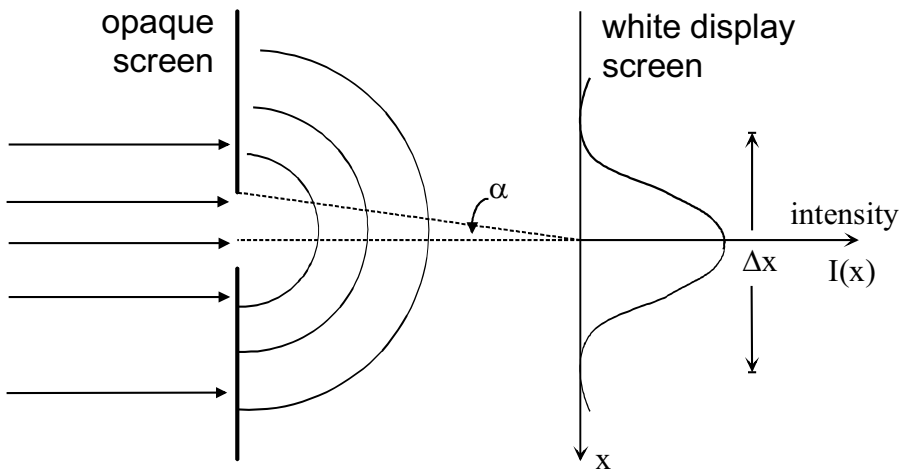


Figure 1-2. Diffraction of light by a slit, or by a circular aperture. Waves spread out from the aperture and fall on a white screen to produce a disk of confusion (Airy disk) whose intensity distribution  $I(x)$  is shown by the graph on the right.

parallel beam of light strikes an opaque diaphragm containing a circular aperture whose radius subtends an angle  $\alpha$  at the center of a white viewing screen. Light passing through the aperture illuminates the screen in the form of a circular pattern with diffuse edges (a **disk of confusion**) whose diameter  $\Delta x$  *exceeds* that of the aperture. In fact, for an aperture of small diameter, diffraction effects cause  $\Delta x$  actually to *increase* as the aperture size is reduced, in accordance with the **Rayleigh** criterion:

$$\Delta x \approx 0.6 \lambda / \sin \alpha \quad (1.1)$$

where  $\lambda$  is the wavelength of the light being diffracted.

Equation (1.1) can be applied to the eye, with the aid of Fig. 1-1b, which shows an equivalent image formed in air at a distance  $f$  from a single focusing lens. For wavelengths in the middle of the visible region of the spectrum,  $\lambda \approx 500$  nm and taking  $d \approx 4$  mm and  $f \approx 2$  cm, the geometry of Fig. 1-1b gives  $\tan \alpha \approx (d/2)/f = 0.1$ , which implies a small value of  $\alpha$  and allows use of the small-angle approximation:  $\sin \alpha \approx \tan \alpha$ . Equation (1.1) then gives the diameter of the disk of confusion as  $\Delta x \approx (0.6)(500 \text{ nm})/0.1 = 3 \mu\text{m}$ .

Imperfect focusing (aberration) of the eye contributes a roughly *equal* amount of image blurring, which we therefore take as  $3 \mu\text{m}$ . In addition, the receptor cells of the retina have diameters in the range  $2 \mu\text{m}$  to  $6 \mu\text{m}$  (mean value  $\approx 4 \mu\text{m}$ ). Apparently, evolution has refined the eye up to the point where further improvements in its construction would lead to relatively little improvement in overall resolution, relative to the diffraction limit  $\Delta x$  imposed by the wave nature of light.

To a reasonable approximation, these three different contributions to the retinal-image blurring can be combined **in quadrature** (by adding squares), treating them in a similar way to the statistical quantities involved in error analysis. Using this procedure, the overall image blurring  $\Delta$  is given by:

$$(\Delta)^2 = (3 \mu\text{m})^2 + (3 \mu\text{m})^2 + (4 \mu\text{m})^2 \quad (1.2)$$

which leads to  $\Delta \approx 6 \mu\text{m}$  as the blurring of the retinal image. This value corresponds to an *angular* blurring for distant objects (see Fig. 1-1b) of

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta\theta \approx (\Delta/f) &\approx (6 \mu\text{m})/(2 \text{ cm}) \approx 3 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad} \\ &\approx (1/60) \text{ degree} = 1 \text{ minute of arc} \end{aligned} \quad (1.3)$$

Distant objects (or details within objects) can be separately distinguished if they subtend angles larger than this. Accordingly, early astronomers were able to determine the positions of bright stars to within a few minutes of arc, using only a dark-adapted eye and simple pointing devices. To see greater detail in the night sky, such as the faint stars within a galaxy, required a *telescope*, which provided *angular* magnification.

Changing the shape of the lens in an adult eye alters its overall focal length by only about 10%, so the *closest* object distance for a focused image on the retina is  $u \approx 25$  cm. At this distance, an angular resolution of  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  rad corresponds (see Fig. 1c) to a lateral dimension of:

$$\Delta R \approx (\Delta\theta) u \approx 0.075 \text{ mm} = 75 \text{ }\mu\text{m} \quad (1.4)$$

Because  $u \approx 25$  cm is the smallest object distance for clear vision,  $\Delta R = 75 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$  can be taken as the diameter of the *smallest* object that can be resolved (distinguished from neighboring objects) by the unaided eye, known as its *object* resolution or the **spatial resolution** in the object plane.

Because there are many interesting objects *below* this size, including the examples in Table 1-1, an optical device with **magnification factor**  $M (> 1)$  is needed to see them; in other words, a **microscope**.

To resolve a small object of diameter  $D$ , we need a magnification  $M^*$  such that the *magnified* diameter ( $M^*D$ ) at the eye's object plane is greater or equal to the object resolution  $\Delta R (\approx 75 \text{ }\mu\text{m})$  of the eye. In other words:

$$M^* = (\Delta R)/D \quad (1.5)$$

Values of this minimum magnification are given in the right-hand column of Table 1-1, for objects of various diameter  $D$ .

## 1.2 The Light-Optical Microscope

Light microscopes were developed in the early 1600's, and some of the best observations were made by Anton van Leeuwenhoek, using tiny glass lenses placed very close to the object and to the eye; see Fig. 1-3. By the late 1600's, this Dutch scientist had observed blood cells, bacteria, and structure *within* the cells of animal tissue, all revelations at the time. But this simple one-lens device had to be positioned very accurately, making observation very tiring in practice.

For routine use, it is more convenient to have a **compound microscope**, containing at least two lenses: an **objective** (placed close to the *object* to be magnified) and an **eyepiece** (placed fairly close to the *eye*). By increasing its dimensions or by employing a larger number of lenses, the magnification  $M$  of a compound microscope can be increased indefinitely. However, a large value of  $M$  does not guarantee that objects of vanishingly small diameter  $D$  can be visualized; in addition to satisfying Eq. (1-5), we must ensure that aberrations and diffraction *within the microscope* are sufficiently low.

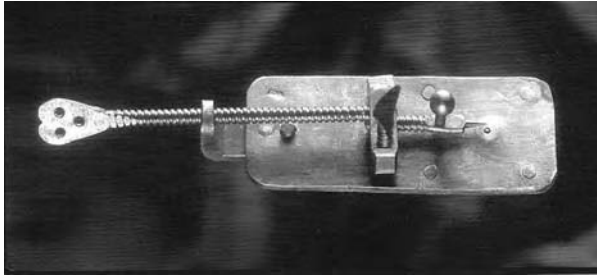


Figure 1-3. One of the single-lens microscopes used by van Leeuwenhoek. The adjustable pointer was used to center the eye on the optic axis of the lens and thereby minimize image aberrations. Courtesy of the FEI Company.

Nowadays, the aberrations of a light-optical instrument can be made unimportant by grinding the lens surfaces to a correct shape or by spacing the lenses so that their aberrations are compensated. But even with such aberration-corrected lenses, the spatial resolution of a compound microscope is limited by *diffraction* at the objective lens. This effect depends on the diameter (aperture) of the lens, just as in the case of diffraction at the pupil of the eye or at a circular hole in an opaque screen. With a large-aperture lens ( $\sin \alpha \approx 1$ ), Eq. (1.1) predicts a resolution limit of just over half the wavelength of light, as first deduced by Abbé in 1873. For light in the middle of the visible spectrum ( $\lambda \approx 0.5 \mu\text{m}$ ), this means a best-possible object resolution of about  $0.3 \mu\text{m}$ .

This is a substantial improvement over the resolution ( $\approx 75 \mu\text{m}$ ) of the unaided eye. But to achieve this resolution, the microscope must magnify the object to a diameter at least equal to  $\Delta R$ , so that *overall* resolution is determined by microscope diffraction rather than the eye's limitations, requiring a microscope magnification of  $M \approx (75 \mu\text{m})/(0.3 \mu\text{m}) = 250$ . Substantially larger values (“empty magnification”) do not significantly improve the sharpness of the magnified image and in fact reduce the **field of view**, the area of the object that can be simultaneously viewed in the image.

Light-optical microscopes are widely used in research and come in two basic forms. The **biological** microscope (Fig. 1-4a) requires an optically transparent specimen, such as a thin slice (section) of animal or plant tissue. Daylight or light from a lamp is directed via a lens or mirror through the specimen and into the microscope, which creates a real image on the retina of the eye or within an attached camera. Variation in the light intensity (**contrast**) in the image occurs because different parts of the specimen *absorb* light to differing degrees. By using **stains** (light-absorbing chemicals attach themselves preferentially to certain regions of the specimen), the contrast can be increased; the image of a tissue section may then reveal the

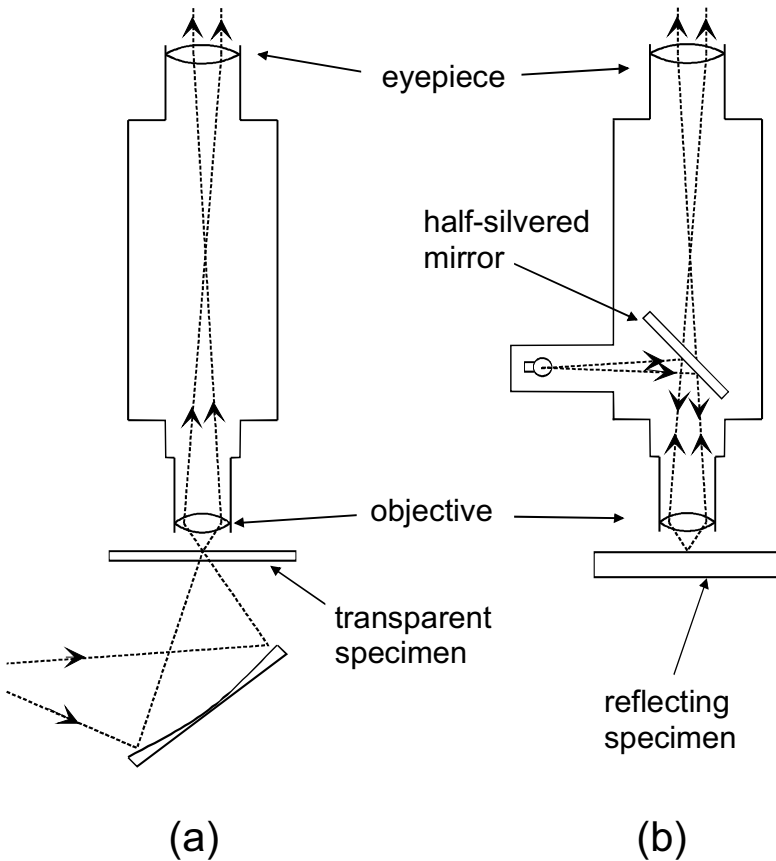
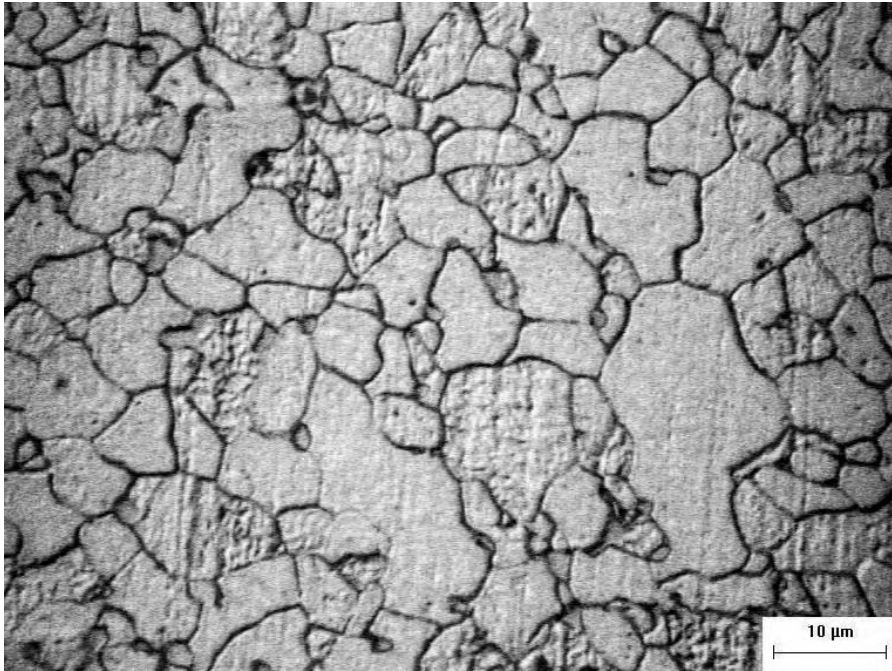


Figure 1-4. Schematic diagrams of (a) a biological microscope, which images light transmitted through the specimen, and (b) a metallurgical microscope, which uses light (often from a built-in illumination source) reflected from the specimen surface.

individual components (organelles) within each biological cell. Because the light travels *through* the specimen, this instrument can also be called a **transmission** light microscope. It is used also by geologists, who are able to prepare rock specimens that are thin enough (below  $0.1\ \mu\text{m}$  thickness) to be optically transparent.

The **metallurgical** microscope (Fig. 1-4b) is used for examining metals and other materials that cannot easily be made thin enough to be optically transparent. Here, the image is formed by light *reflected* from the surface of the specimen. Because perfectly smooth surfaces provide little or no contrast, the specimen is usually immersed for a few seconds in a chemical **etch**, a solution that preferentially attacks certain regions to leave an uneven surface whose reflectivity varies from one location to another. In this way,





*Figure 1-5.* Light-microscope image of a polished and etched specimen of X70 pipeline steel, showing dark lines representing the grain boundaries between ferrite (bcc iron) crystallites. Courtesy of Dr. D. Ivey, University of Alberta.

the microscope reveals the microstructure of crystalline materials, such as the different phases present in a metal alloy. Most etches preferentially dissolve the regions between individual crystallites (grains) of the specimen, where the atoms are less closely packed, leaving a grain-boundary groove that is visible as a dark line, as in Fig. 1-5. The metallurgical microscope can therefore be used to determine the grain shape and grain size of metals and alloys.

As we have seen, the resolution of a light-optical microscope is limited by diffraction. As indicated by Eq. (1.1), one possibility for *improving* resolution (which means *reducing*  $\Delta x$ , and therefore  $\Delta$  and  $\Delta R$ ) is to decrease the wavelength  $\lambda$  of the radiation. The simplest option is to use an **oil-immersion** objective lens: a drop of a transparent liquid (refractive index  $n$ ) is placed between the specimen and the objective so that the light being focused (and diffracted) has a reduced wavelength:  $\lambda/n$ . Using cedar oil ( $n = 1.52$ ) allows a 34% improvement in resolution.

Greater improvement in resolution comes from using **ultraviolet** (UV) radiation, meaning wavelengths in the range 100 – 300 nm. The light source

can be a gas-discharge lamp and the final image is viewed on a phosphor screen that converts the UV to visible light. Because ordinary glass strongly absorbs UV light, the focusing lenses must be made from a material such as quartz (transparent down to 190 nm) or lithium fluoride (transparent down to about 100 nm).

### 1.3 The X-ray Microscope

Being electromagnetic waves with a wavelength shorter than those of UV light, x-rays offer the possibility of even better spatial resolution. This radiation cannot be focused by convex or concave lenses, as the refractive index of solid materials is close to that of air (1.0) at x-ray wavelengths. Instead, x-ray focusing relies on devices that make use of *diffraction* rather than refraction.

**Hard x-rays** have wavelengths below 1 nm and are diffracted by the planes of atoms in a solid, whose spacing is of similar dimensions. In fact, such diffraction is routinely used to determine the atomic structure of solids. X-ray microscopes more commonly use **soft x-rays**, with wavelengths in the range 1 nm to 10 nm. Soft x-rays are diffracted by structures whose periodicity is several nm, such as thin-film multilayers that act as focusing mirrors, or **zone plates**, which are essentially diffraction gratings with circular symmetry (see Fig. 5-23) that focus monochromatic x-rays (those of a single wavelength); as depicted Fig. 1-6.

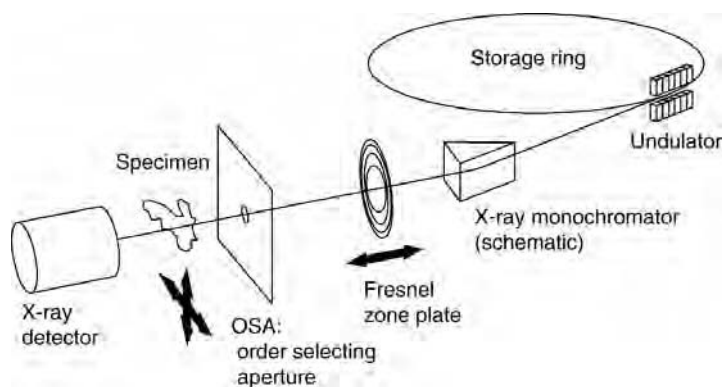


Figure 1-6. Schematic diagram of a scanning transmission x-ray microscope (STXM) attached to a synchrotron radiation source. The monochromator transmits x-rays with a narrow range of wavelength, and these monochromatic rays are focused onto the specimen by means of a Fresnel zone plate. The order-selecting aperture ensures that only a single x-ray beam is focused and scanned across the specimen. From Neuhausler *et al.* (1999), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.

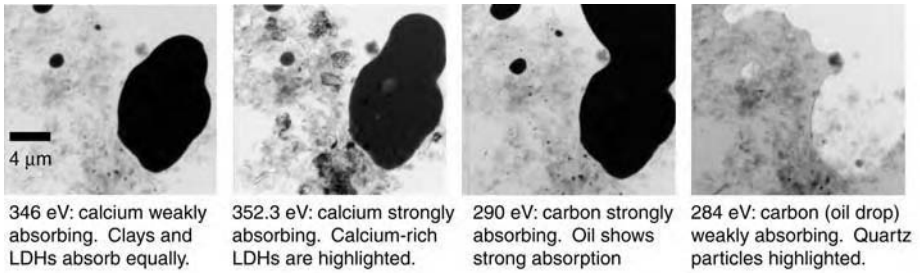


Figure 1-7. Scanning transmission x-ray microscope (STXM) images of a clay-stabilized oil-water emulsion. By changing the photon energy, different components of the emulsion become bright or dark, and can be identified from their known x-ray absorption properties. From Neuhausler *et al.* (1999), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.

Unfortunately, such focusing devices are less efficient than the glass lenses used in light optics. Also, laboratory x-ray sources are relatively weak (x-ray diffraction patterns are often recorded over many minutes or hours). This situation prevented the practical realization of an x-ray microscope until the development of an intense radiation source: the **synchrotron**, in which electrons circulate at high speed in vacuum within a **storage ring**. Guided around a circular path by strong electromagnets, their centripetal acceleration results in the emission of **bremsstrahlung x-rays**. Devices called undulators and wobblers can also be inserted into the ring; an array of magnets causes additional deviation of the electron from a straight-line path and produces a strong bremsstrahlung effect, as in Fig. 1-6. Synchrotron x-ray sources are large and expensive (> \$100M) but their radiation has a variety of uses; several dozen have been constructed throughout the world during the past 20 years.

An important feature of the x-ray microscope is that it can be used to study hydrated (wet or frozen) specimens such as biological tissue or water/oil emulsions, surrounded by air or a water-vapor environment during the microscopy. In this case, x-rays in the wavelength range 2.3 to 4.4 nm are used (photon energy between 285 and 543 eV), the so-called **water window** in which hydrated specimens appear relatively transparent. Contrast in the x-ray image arises because different regions of the specimen absorb the x-rays to differing extents, as illustrated in Fig. 1-7. The resolution of these images, determined largely by zone-plate focusing, is typically 30 nm.

In contrast, the specimen in an *electron* microscope is usually in a dry state, surrounded by a high vacuum. Unless the specimen is cooled well below room temperature or enclosed in a special “environmental cell,” any water quickly evaporates into the surroundings.

## 1.4 The Transmission Electron Microscope

Early in the 20th century, physicists discovered that material particles such as electrons possess a wavelike character. Inspired by Einstein's photon description of electromagnetic radiation, Louis de Broglie proposed that their wavelength is given by

$$\lambda = h/p = h/(mv) \quad (1.5)$$

where  $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}$  Js is the Planck constant;  $p$ ,  $m$ , and  $v$  represent the momentum, mass, and speed of the electron. For electrons emitted into vacuum from a heated filament and accelerated through a potential difference of 50 V,  $v \approx 4.2 \times 10^6$  m/s and  $\lambda \approx 0.17$  nm. Because this wavelength is comparable to atomic dimensions, such "slow" electrons are strongly diffracted from the regular array of atoms at the surface of a crystal, as first observed by Davisson and Germer (1927).

Raising the accelerating potential to 50 kV, the wavelength shrinks to about 5 pm (0.005 nm) and such higher-energy electrons can penetrate distances of several microns ( $\mu\text{m}$ ) into a solid. If the solid is crystalline, the electrons are diffracted by atomic planes inside the material, as in the case of x-rays. It is therefore possible to form a **transmission electron diffraction** pattern from electrons that have passed *through* a thin specimen, as first demonstrated by G.P. Thomson (1927). Later it was realized that if these transmitted electrons could be focused, their very short wavelength would allow the specimen to be imaged with a spatial resolution much better than the light-optical microscope.

The focusing of electrons relies on the fact that, in addition to their wavelike character, they behave as negatively charged particles and are therefore deflected by electric or magnetic fields. This principle was used in cathode-ray tubes, TV display tubes, and computer screens. In fact, the first electron microscopes made use of technology already developed for radar applications of cathode-ray tubes. In a **transmission electron microscope** (TEM), electrons penetrate a *thin* specimen and are then imaged by appropriate lenses, in broad analogy with the *biological* light microscope (Fig. 1-4a).

Some of the first development work on electron lenses was done by Ernst Ruska in Berlin. By 1931 he had observed his first transmission image (magnification = 17) of a metal grid, using the two-lens microscope shown in Fig. 1-8. His electron lenses were short coils carrying a direct current, producing a magnetic field centered along the optic axis. By 1933, Ruska had added a third lens and obtained images of cotton fiber and aluminum foil with a resolution somewhat better than that of the light microscope.

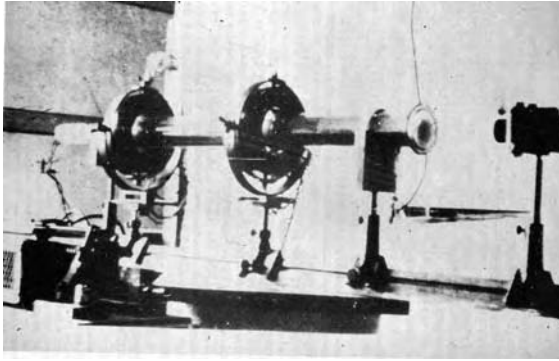


Figure 1-8. Early photograph of a horizontal two-stage electron microscope (Knoll and Ruska, 1932). This material is used by permission of Wiley-VCH, Berlin.

Similar microscopes were built by Marton and co-workers in Brussels, who by 1934 had produced the first images of nuclei within the interior of biological cells. These early TEMs used a horizontal sequence of lenses, as in Fig. 1-8, but such an arrangement was abandoned after it was realized that precise alignment of the lenses along the optic axis is critical to obtaining the best resolution. By stacking the lenses in a vertical column, good alignment can be maintained for a longer time; gravitational forces act *parallel* to the optic axis, making slow mechanical distortion (creep) less troublesome.

In 1936, the Metropolitan Vickers company embarked on commercial production of a TEM in the United Kingdom. However, the first regular production came from the Siemens Company in Germany; their 1938 prototype achieved a spatial resolution of 10 nm with an accelerating voltage of 80 kV; see Fig. 1-9.

Some early TEMs used a gas discharge as the source of electrons but this was soon replaced by a V-shaped filament made from tungsten wire, which emits electrons when heated in vacuum. The vacuum was generated by a mechanical pump together with a diffusion pump, often constructed out of glass and containing boiling mercury. The electrons were accelerated by applying a high voltage, generated by an electronic oscillator circuit and a step-up transformer. As the transistor had not been invented, the oscillator circuit used vacuum-tube electronics. In fact, vacuum tubes were used in high-voltage circuitry (including television receivers) until the 1980's because they are less easily damaged by voltage spikes, which occur when there is high-voltage discharge (not uncommon at the time). Vacuum tubes were also used to control and stabilize the dc current applied to the electron lenses.



*Figure 1-9.* First commercial TEM from the Siemens Company, employing three magnetic lenses that were water-cooled and energized by batteries. The objective lens used a focal length down to 2.8 mm at 80 kV, giving an estimated resolution of 10 nm.

Although companies in the USA, Holland, UK, Germany, Japan, China, USSR, and Czechoslovakia have at one time manufactured transmission electron microscopes, competition has reduced their number to four: the Japanese Electron Optics Laboratory (JEOL) and Hitachi in Japan, Philips/FEI in Holland/USA, and Zeiss in Germany.

The further development of the TEM is illustrated by the two JEOL instruments shown in Fig. 1-10. Their model 100B (introduced around 1970) used both vacuum tubes and transistors for control of the lens currents and the high voltage (up to 100 kV) and gave a spatial resolution of 0.3 nm. Model 2010 (introduced 1990) employed integrated circuits and digital control; at 200 kV accelerating voltage, it provided a resolution of 0.2 nm.

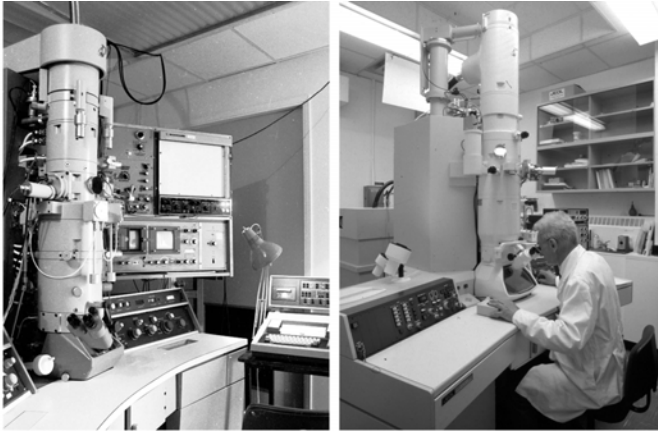


Figure 1-10. JEOL transmission electron microscopes: (a) model 100B and (b) model 2010.

The TEM has proved invaluable for examining the ultrastructure of metals. For example, crystalline defects known as dislocations were first predicted by theorists to account for the fact that metals deform under much lower forces than calculated for perfect crystalline array of atoms. They were first seen directly in TEM images of aluminum; one of M.J. Whelan's original micrographs is reproduced in Fig. 1-11. Note the increase in resolution compared to the light-microscope image of Fig. 1-5; detail can now be seen within each metal crystallite. With a modern TEM (resolution  $\approx 0.2$  nm), it is even possible to image individual atomic planes or columns of atoms, as we will discuss in Chapter 4.

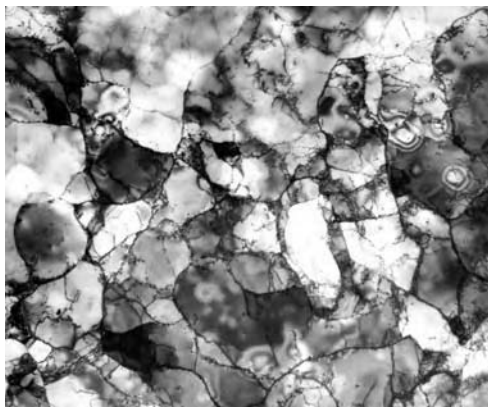
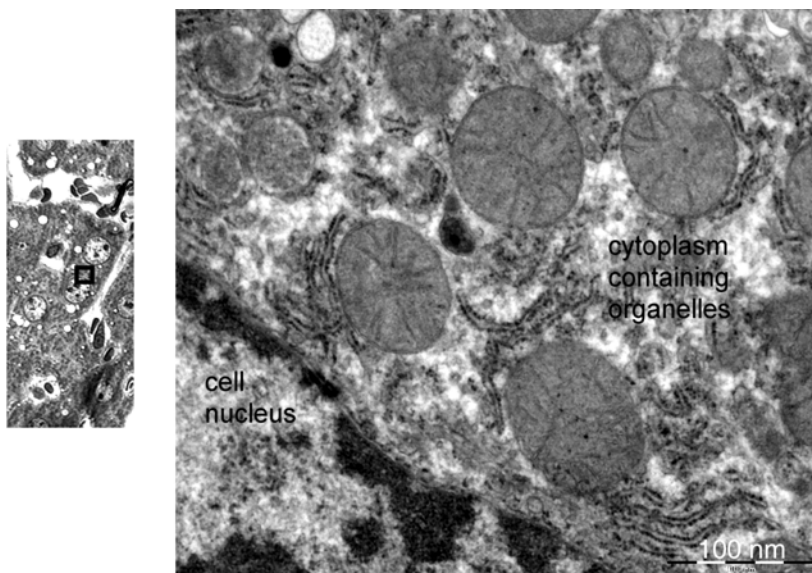


Figure 1-11. TEM diffraction-contrast image ( $M \approx 10,000$ ) of polycrystalline aluminum. Individual crystallites (grains) show up with different brightness levels; low-angle boundaries and dislocations are visible as dark lines within each crystallite. Circular fringes (top-right) represent local changes in specimen thickness. Courtesy of M.J. Whelan, Oxford University.



*Figure 1-12.* TEM image of a stained specimen of mouse-liver tissue, corresponding approximately to the small rectangular area within the light-microscope image on the left. Courtesy of R. Bhatnagar, Biological Sciences Microscopy Unit, University of Alberta.

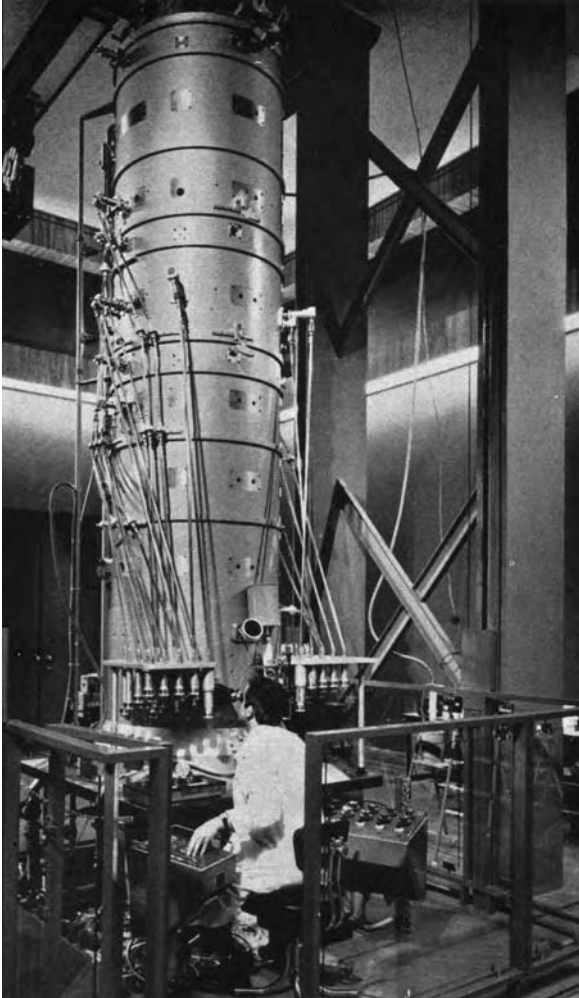
The TEM has been equally useful in the life sciences, for example for examining plant and animal tissue, bacteria, and viruses. Figure 1-12 shows images of mouse-liver tissue obtained using transmission light and electron microscopes. Cell membranes and a few internal organelles are visible in the light-microscope image, but the TEM image reveals much more structure in the organelles, due to its higher spatial resolution.

Although most modern TEMs use an electron accelerating voltage between 100 kV and 300 kV, a few high-voltage instruments (HVEMs) have been constructed with accelerating voltages as high as 3 MV; see Fig. 1-13. The main motivation was the fact that increasing the electron energy (and therefore momentum) decreases the de Broglie wavelength of electrons and therefore lowers the diffraction limit to spatial resolution. However, technical problems of voltage stabilization have prevented HVEMs from achieving their theoretical resolution. A few are still in regular use and are advantageous for looking at thicker specimens, as electrons of very high energy can penetrate further into a solid (1  $\mu\text{m}$  or more) without excessive scattering.

One of the original hopes for the HVEM was that it could be used to study the behavior of living cells. By enclosing a specimen within an environmental chamber, water vapor can be supplied to keep the cells



hydrated. But high-energy electrons are a form of ionizing radiation, similar to x-rays or gamma rays in their ability to ionize atoms and produce irreversible chemical changes. In fact, a focused beam of electrons represents a radiation flux comparable to that at the center of an exploding nuclear weapon. Not surprisingly, therefore, it was found that TEM observation kills living tissue in much less time than needed to record a high-resolution image.



*Figure 1-13.* A 3 MV HVEM constructed at the C.N.R.S. Laboratories in Toulouse and in operation by 1970. To focus the high-energy electrons, large-diameter lenses were required, and the TEM column became so high that long control rods were needed between the operator and the moving parts (for example, to provide specimen motion). Courtesy of G. Dupouy, personal communication.

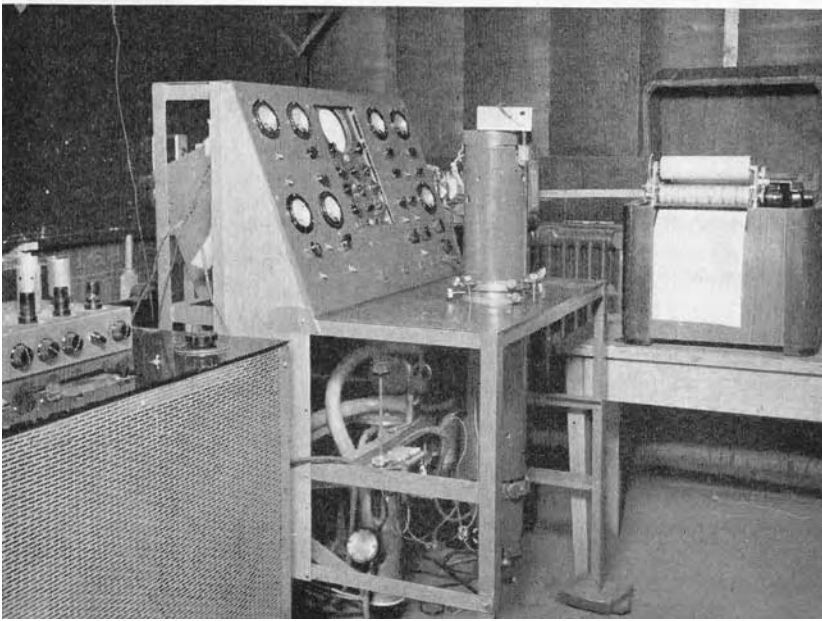
## 1.5 The Scanning Electron Microscope

One limitation of the TEM is that, unless the specimen is made very thin, electrons are strongly scattered within the specimen, or even absorbed rather than transmitted. This constraint has provided the incentive to develop electron microscopes that are capable of examining relatively thick (so-called **bulk**) specimens. In other words, there is need of an electron-beam instrument that is equivalent to the metallurgical light microscope but which offers the advantage of better spatial resolution.

Electrons can indeed be “reflected” (backscattered) from a bulk specimen, as in the original experiments of Davisson and Germer (1927). But another possibility is for the incoming (**primary**) electrons to supply energy to the *atomic* electrons that are present in a solid, which can then be released as **secondary electrons**. These electrons are emitted with a range of energies, making it more difficult to focus them into an image by electron lenses. However, there is an alternative mode of image formation that uses a **scanning** principle: primary electrons are focused into a small-diameter electron **probe** that is scanned across the specimen, making use of the fact that electrostatic or magnetic fields, applied at right angles to the beam, can be used to change its direction of travel. By scanning simultaneously in two perpendicular directions, a square or rectangular area of specimen (known as a **raster**) can be covered and an image of this area can be formed by collecting secondary electrons from each point on the specimen.

The same raster-scan signals can be used to deflect the beam generated within a cathode-ray tube (CRT), in exact synchronism with the motion of the electron beam that is focused on the specimen. If the secondary-electron signal is amplified and applied to the electron gun of the CRT (to change the number of electrons reaching the CRT screen), the resulting brightness variation on the phosphor represents a secondary-electron image of the specimen. In raster scanning, the image is generated serially (point by point) rather than simultaneously, as in the TEM or light microscope. A similar principle is used in the production and reception of television signals.

A **scanning electron microscope** (SEM) based on secondary emission of electrons was developed at the RCA Laboratories in New Jersey, under wartime conditions. Some of the early prototypes employed a field-emission electron source (discussed in Chapter 3), whereas later models used a heated-filament source, the electrons being focused onto the specimen by electrostatic lenses. An early version of a FAX machine was employed for image recording; see Fig. 1-14. The spatial resolution was estimated to be 50 nm, nearly a factor of ten better than the light-optical microscope.

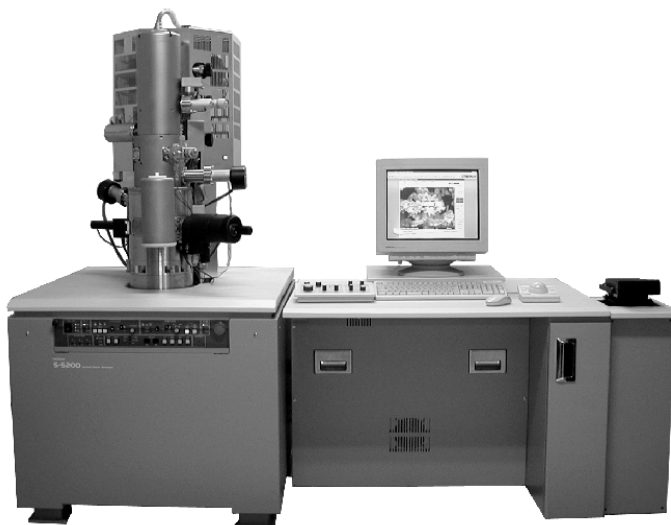


*Figure 1-14.* Scanning electron microscope at RCA Laboratories (Zwyorkin *et al.*, 1942) using electrostatic lenses and vacuum-tube electronics (as in the amplifier on left of picture). An image was produced on the facsimile machine visible on the right-hand side of the picture. This material is used by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Further SEM development occurred after the Second World War, when Charles Oatley and colleagues began a research and construction program in the Engineering Department at Cambridge University. Their first SEM images were obtained in 1951, and a commercial model (built by the AEI Company) was delivered to the Pulp and Paper Research Institute of Canada in 1958.

Sustained commercial production was initiated by the Cambridge Instrument Company in 1965, and there are now about a dozen SEM manufacturers worldwide. Figure 1-15 shows one example of a modern instrument. Image information is stored in a computer that controls the SEM, and the image appears on the display monitor of the computer.

A modern SEM provides an image resolution typically between 1 nm and 10 nm, not as good as the TEM but much superior to the light microscope. In addition, SEM images have a relatively large **depth of focus**: specimen features that are displaced from the plane of focus appear almost sharply in-focus. As we shall see, this characteristic results from the fact that electrons in the SEM (or the TEM) travel very close to the optic axis, a requirement for obtaining good image resolution.



*Figure 1-15.* Hitachi-S5200 field-emission scanning electron microscope. This instrument can operate in SEM or STEM mode and provides an image resolution down to 1 nm.

## 1.6 Scanning Transmission Electron Microscope

It is possible to employ the fine-probe/scanning technique with a thin sample and record, instead of secondary electrons, the electrons that emerge (in a particular direction) from the opposite side of the specimen. The resulting is a **scanning-transmission electron microscope** (STEM). The first STEM was constructed by von Ardenne in 1938 by adding scanning coils to a TEM, and today many TEMs are equipped with scanning attachments, making them dual-mode (**TEM/STEM**) instruments.

In order to compete with a conventional TEM in terms of spatial resolution, the electrons must be focused into a probe of sub-nm dimensions. For this purpose, the hot-filament electron source that is often used in the SEM (and TEM) must be replaced by a field-emission source, in which electrons are released from a very sharp tungsten tip under the application of an intense electric field. This was the arrangement used by Crewe and co-workers in Chicago, who in 1965 constructed a **dedicated STEM** that operated only in scanning mode. The field-emission gun required ultra-high vacuum (UHV), meaning ambient pressures around  $10^{-8}$  Pa. After five years of development, this type of instrument produced the first-ever images of single atoms, visible as bright dots on a dark background (Fig. 1-16).

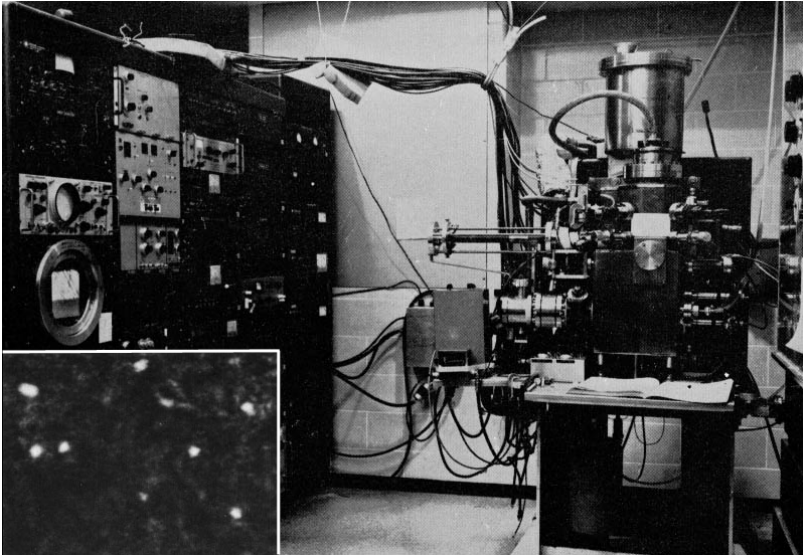


Figure 1-16. Photograph of Chicago STEM and (bottom-left inset) image of mercury atoms on a thin-carbon support film. Courtesy of Dr. Albert Crewe (personal communication).

Atomic-scale resolution is also available in the conventional (fixed-beam) TEM. A crystalline specimen is oriented so that its atomic columns lie parallel to the incident-electron beam, and it is actually *columns* of atoms that are imaged; see Fig. 1-17. It was originally thought that such images might reveal structure within each atom, but such an interpretation is questionable. In fact, the internal structure of the atom can be deduced by analyzing the angular distribution of scattered charged particles (as first done for alpha particles by Ernest Rutherford) without the need to form a direct image.

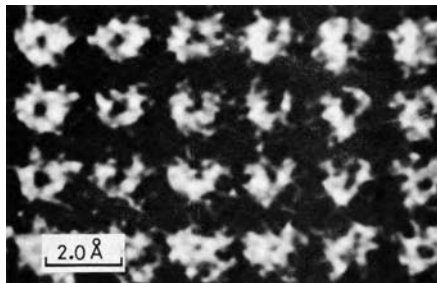


Figure 1-17. Early atomic-resolution TEM image of a gold crystal (Hashimoto *et al.*, 1977), recorded at 65 nm defocus with the incident electrons parallel to the 001 axis. Courtesy Chairperson of the Publication Committee, The Physical Society of Japan, and the authors.

## 1.7 Analytical Electron Microscopy

All of the images seen up to now provide information about the *structure* of a specimen, in some cases down to the atomic scale. But often there is a need for chemical information, such as the local chemical composition. For this purpose, we require some response from the specimen that is sensitive to the exact atomic number  $Z$  of the atoms. As  $Z$  increases, the nuclear charge increases, drawing electrons closer to the nucleus and changing their energy. The electrons that are of most use to us are not the outer (valence) electrons but rather the **inner-shell** electrons. Because the latter do not take part in chemical bonding, their energies are unaffected by the surrounding atoms and remain indicative of the nuclear charge and therefore atomic number.

When an inner-shell electron makes a transition from a higher to a lower energy level, an x-ray photon is emitted, whose energy ( $hf = hc/\lambda$ ) is equal to the difference in the two quantum levels. This property is employed in an x-ray tube, where primary electrons bombard a solid target (the anode) and excite inner-shell electrons to a higher energy. In the de-excitation process, **characteristic** x-rays are generated. Similarly, the primary electrons entering a TEM, SEM, or STEM specimen cause x-ray emission, and by identifying the wavelengths or photon energies present, we can perform chemical (more correctly: elemental) analysis. Nowadays, an x-ray emission spectrometer is a common attachment to a TEM, SEM, or STEM, making the instrument into an analytical electron microscope (AEM).

Other forms of AEM make use of characteristic-energy Auger electrons emitted from the specimen, or the primary electrons themselves after they have traversed a thin specimen and lost characteristic amounts of energy. We will examine all of these options in Chapter 6.

## 1.8 Scanning-Probe Microscopes

The raster method of image formation is also employed in a scanning-probe microscope, where a sharply-pointed tip (the probe) is *mechanically* scanned in close proximity to the surface of a specimen in order to sense some local property. The first such device to achieve really high spatial resolution was the **scanning tunneling microscope** (STM) in which a sharp conducting tip is brought within about 1 nm of the sample and a small potential difference ( $\approx 1$  V) is applied. Provided the tip and specimen are electrically conducting, electrons move between the tip and the specimen by the process of **quantum-mechanical tunneling**. This phenomenon is a direct result of the wavelike characteristics of electrons and is analogous to the leakage of

visible-light photons between two glass surfaces brought within  $1\ \mu\text{m}$  of each other (sometimes called frustrated internal reflection).

Maintaining a tip within  $1\ \text{nm}$  of a surface (without touching) requires great mechanical precision, an absence of vibration, and the presence of a feedback mechanism. Because the tunneling current increases dramatically with decreasing tip-sample separation, a motorized gear system can be set up to advance the tip towards the sample (in the  $z$ -direction) until a pre-set tunneling current (e.g.  $1\ \text{nA}$ ) is achieved; see Fig. 1-18a. The tip-sample gap is then about  $1\ \text{nm}$  in length and fine  $z$ -adjustments can be made with a piezoelectric drive (a ceramic crystal that changes its length when voltage is applied). If this gap were to decrease, due to thermal expansion or contraction for example, the tunneling current would start to increase, raising the voltage across a series resistance (see Fig. 1-18a). This voltage change is amplified and applied to the piezo  $z$ -drive so as to *decrease* the gap and return the current to its original value. Such an arrangement is called **negative feedback** because information about the gap length is fed back to the electromechanical system, which acts to keep the gap constant.

To perform scanning microscopy, the tip is raster-scanned across the surface of the specimen in  $x$ - and  $y$ -directions, again using piezoelectric drives. If the negative-feedback mechanism remains active, the gap between tip and sample will remain constant, and the tip will move in the  $z$ -direction in exact synchronism with the undulations of the surface (the specimen **topography**). This  $z$ -motion is represented by variations in the  $z$ -piezo voltage, which can therefore be used to modulate the beam in a CRT display device (as in the SEM) or stored in computer memory as a topographical image.

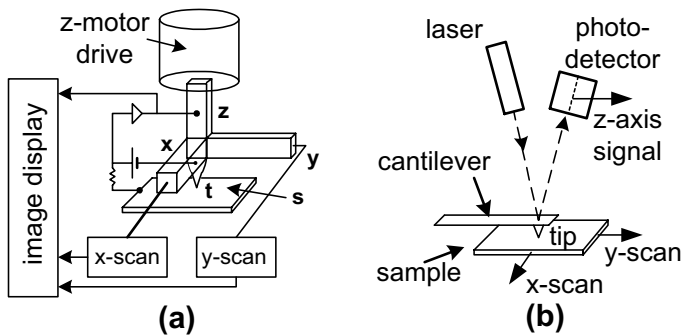
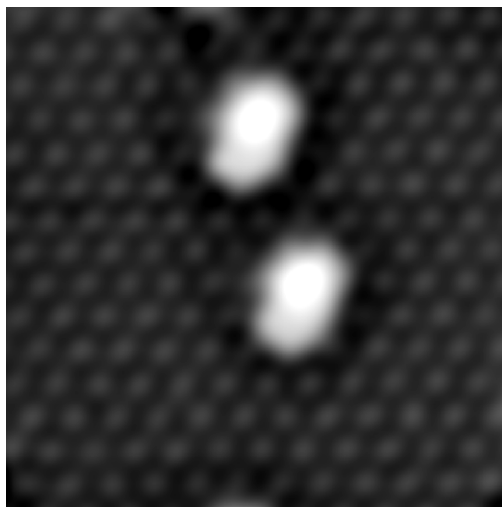


Figure 1-18. (a) Principle of the scanning tunneling microscope (STM);  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  represent piezoelectric drives,  $t$  is the tunneling tip, and  $s$  is the specimen. (b) Principle of the scanning force (or atomic force) microscope. In the  $x$ - and  $y$ -directions, the tip is stationary and the sample is raster-scanned by piezoelectric drives.

A remarkable feature of the STM is the high spatial resolution that can be achieved: better than 0.01 nm in the  $z$ -direction, which follows directly from the fact that the tunneling current is a strong (exponential) function of the tunneling gap. It is also possible to achieve high resolution ( $< 0.1$  nm) in the  $x$ - and  $y$ -directions, even when the tip is not atomically sharp (STM tips are made by electrolytic sharpening of a wire or even by using a mechanical wire cutter). The explanation is again in terms of the strong dependence of tunneling current on gap length: most of the electrons tunnel from a single tip atom that is nearest to the specimen, even when other atoms are only slightly further away. As a result, the STM can be used to study the structure of surfaces with single-atom resolution, as illustrated in Fig. 1-19.

Nevertheless, problems can occur due to the existence of “multiple tips”, resulting in false features (**artifacts**) in an image. Also, the scan times become long if the scanning is done slowly enough for the tip to move in the  $z$ -direction. As a result, *atomic-resolution* images are sometimes recorded in variable-current mode, where (once the tip is close to the sample) the feedback mechanism is turned off and the tip is scanned over a *short* distance parallel to the sample surface; changes in tunneling current are then displayed in the image. In this mode, the field of view is limited; even for a very smooth surface, the tip would eventually crash into the specimen, damaging the tip and/or specimen.



*Figure 1-19.* 5 nm  $\times$  5 nm area of a hydrogen-passivated Si (111) surface, imaged in an STM with a tip potential of  $-1.5$  V. The subtle hexagonal structure represents H-covered Si atoms, while the two prominent white patches arise from dangling bonds where the H atoms have been removed (these appear non-circular because of the somewhat irregularly shaped tip). Courtesy of Jason Pitters and Bob Wolkow, National Institute of Nanotechnology, Canada.



Typically, the STM head is quite small, a few centimeters in dimensions; small size minimizes temperature variations (and therefore thermal drift) and forces mechanical vibrations (resonance) to higher frequencies, where they are more easily damped.

The STM was developed at the IBM Zurich Laboratory (Binnig *et al.*, 1982) and earned two of its inventors the 1986 Nobel prize in Physics (shared with Ernst Ruska, for his development of the TEM). It quickly inspired other types of scanning-probe microscope, such as the **atomic force microscope** (AFM) in which a sharp tip (at the end of a cantilever) is brought sufficiently close to the surface of a specimen, so that it essentially touches it and senses an interatomic force. For many years, this principle had been applied to measure the roughness of surfaces or the height of surface steps, with a height resolution of a few nanometers. But in the 1990's, the instrument was refined to give near-atomic resolution.

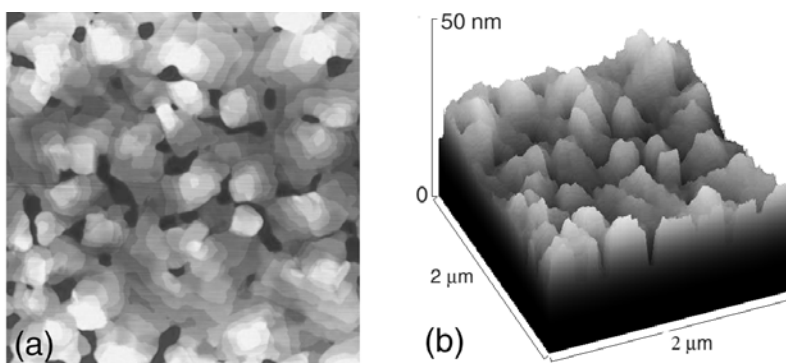
Initially, the  $z$ -motion of the cantilever was detected by locating an STM tip immediately above. Nowadays it is usually achieved by observing the angular deflection of a reflected laser beam while the specimen is scanned in the  $x$ - and  $y$ -directions; see Fig. 1-18b. AFM cantilevers can be made (from silicon nitride) in large quantities, using the same kind of photolithography process that yields semiconductor integrated circuits, so they are easily replaced when damaged or contaminated. As with the STM, scanning-force images must be examined critically to avoid misleading artifacts such as multiple-tip effects.

The mechanical force is repulsive if the tip is in direct contact with the sample, but at a small distance above, the tip senses an attractive (van der Waals) force. Either regime may be used to provide images. Alternatively, a 4-quadrant photodetector can sense torsional motion (twisting) of the AFM cantilever, which results from a sideways frictional force, giving an image that is essentially a map of the local coefficient of friction. Also, with a modified tip, the magnetic field of a sample can be monitored, allowing the direct imaging of magnetic data-storage media materials for example.

Although it is more difficult to obtain atomic resolution than with an STM, the AFM has the advantage that it does not require a conducting sample. In fact, the AFM can operate with its tip and specimen immersed in a liquid such as water, making the instrument valuable for imaging biological specimens. This versatility, combined with its high resolution and relatively moderate cost, has enabled the scanning probe microscope to take over some of the applications previously reserved for the SEM and TEM. However, mechanically scanning large areas of specimen is very time-consuming; it is less feasible to zoom in and out (by changing magnification) than with an

electron-beam instrument. Also, there is no way of implementing elemental analysis in the AFM. An STM can be used in a spectroscopy mode but the information obtained relates to the *outer-shell* electron distribution and is less directly linked to chemical composition. And except in special cases, a scanning-probe image represents only the surface properties of a specimen and not the *internal* structure that is visible using a TEM.

Figure 1-20a shows a typical AFM image, presented in a conventional way in which local changes in image brightness represent variations in surface height (motion of the tip in the  $z$ -direction). However, scanning-probe images are often presented as so-called  $y$ -modulation images, in which  $z$ -motion of the tip is used to deflect the electron beam of the CRT display in the  $y$ -direction, perpendicular to its scan direction. This procedure gives a three-dimensional effect, equivalent to viewing the specimen surface at an oblique angle rather than in the perpendicular to the surface. The distance scale of this  $y$ -modulation is often magnified relative to the scale along the  $x$ - and  $y$ -scan directions, exaggerating height differences but making them more easily visible; see Fig. 1-20b.



*Figure 1-20.* AFM images of a vacuum-deposited thin film of the organic semiconductor pentacene: (a) brightness-modulation image, in which abrupt changes in image brightness represent steps (terraces) on the surface, and (b)  $y$ -modulation image of the same area. Courtesy of Hui Qian, University of Alberta.



## Chapter 2

# ELECTRON OPTICS

Chapter 1 contained an overview of various forms of microscopy, carried out using light, electrons, and mechanical probes. In each case, the microscope forms an enlarged image of the original object (the specimen) in order to convey its internal or external structure. Before dealing in more detail with various forms of electron microscopy, we will first examine some general concepts behind image formation. These concepts were derived during the development of visible-light optics but have a range of application that is much wider.

### 2.1 Properties of an Ideal Image

Clearly, an optical image is closely related to the corresponding object, but what does this mean? What properties should the image have in relation to the object? The answer to this question was provided by the Scottish physicist James Clark Maxwell, who also developed the equations relating electric and magnetic fields that underlie all electrostatic and magnetic phenomena, including electromagnetic waves. In a journal article (Maxwell, 1858), remarkable for its clarity and for its frank comments about fellow scientists, he stated the requirements of a perfect image as follows

1. For each point in the object, there is an **equivalent** point in the image.
2. The object and image are geometrically **similar**.
3. If the object is **planar** and perpendicular to the optic axis, so is the image.

Besides defining the desirable properties of an image, Maxwell's principles are useful for categorizing the **image defects** that occur (in practice) when the image is *not* ideal. To see this, we will discuss each rule in turn.

**Rule 1** states that for each point in the object we can define an *equivalent* point in the image. In many forms of microscopy, the connection between these two points is made by some kind of particle (*e.g.*, electron or photon) that leaves the object and ends up at the related image point. It is conveyed from object to image through a focusing device (such as a lens) and its trajectory is referred to as a **ray** path. One particular ray path is called the **optic axis**; if no mirrors are involved, the optic axis is a straight line passing through the center of the lens or lenses.

How closely this rule is obeyed depends on several properties of the lens. For example, if the focusing *strength* is incorrect, the image formed at a particular plane will be **out-of-focus**. Particles leaving a single point in the object then arrive anywhere within a circle *surrounding* the ideal-image point, a so-called **disk of confusion**. But even if the focusing power is appropriate, a real lens can produce a disk of confusion because of lens **aberrations**: particles having different energy, or which take different paths after leaving the object, arrive displaced from the “ideal” image point. The image then appears blurred, with loss of fine detail, just as in the case of an out-of-focus image.

**Rule 2**: If we consider object points that form a pattern, their equivalent points in the image should form a similar pattern, rather than being distributed at random. For example, any three object points define a triangle and their locations in the image represent a triangle that is *similar* in the geometric sense: it contains the same angles. The image triangle may have a different orientation than that of the object triangle; for example it could be **inverted** (relative to the optic axis) without violating Rule 2, as in Fig. 2-1. Also, the separations of the three image points may differ from those in the object by a **magnification factor**  $M$ , in which case the image is **magnified** (if  $M > 1$ ) or **demagnified** (if  $M < 1$ ).

Although the light image formed by a glass lens may appear similar to the object, close inspection often reveals the presence of **distortion**. This effect is most easily observed if the object contains straight lines, which appear as curved lines in the distorted image.

The presence of image distortion is equivalent to a variation of the magnification factor with *position* in the object or image: **pincushion** distortion corresponds to  $M$  increasing with radial distance away from the optic axis (Fig. 2-2a), **barrel** distortion corresponds to  $M$  decreasing away from the axis (Fig. 2-2b). As we will see, many electron lenses cause a *rotation* of the image, and if this rotation increases with distance from the axis, the result is **spiral** distortion (Fig. 2-2c).

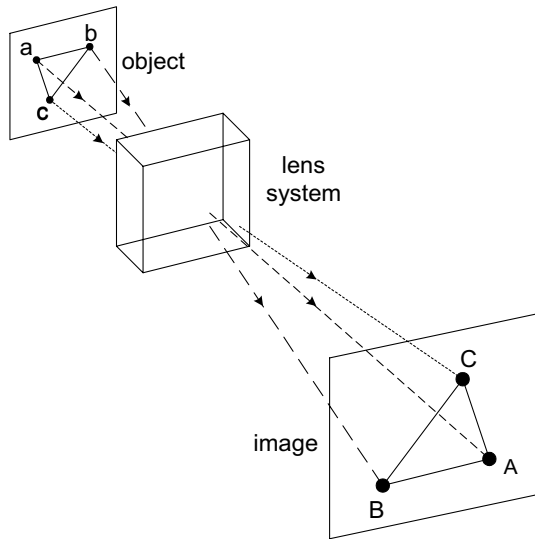


Figure 2-1. A triangle imaged by an ideal lens, with magnification and inversion. Image points A, B, and C are equivalent to the object points a, b, and c, respectively.

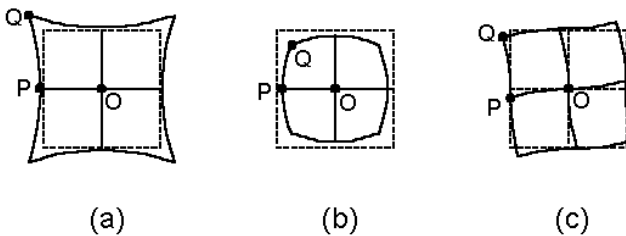


Figure 2-2. (a) Square mesh (dashed lines) imaged with pincushion distortion (solid curves); magnification  $M$  is higher at point Q than at point P. (b) Image showing barrel distortion, with  $M$  at Q lower than at P. (c) Image of a square, showing spiral distortion; the counterclockwise rotation is higher at Q than at P.

**Rule 3:** Images usually exist in two dimensions and occupy a *flat* plane. Even if the corresponding object is three-dimensional, only a single object plane is *precisely* in focus in the image. In fact, lenses are usually evaluated using a flat test chart and the sharpest image should ideally be produced on a flat screen. But if the focusing power of a lens depends on the distance of an object point from the optic axis, different regions of the image are brought to focus at different distances from the lens. The optical system then suffers from **curvature of field**; the sharpest image would be formed on a surface

that is curved rather than planar. Inexpensive cameras have sometimes compensated for this lens defect by curving the photographic film. Likewise, the Schmidt astronomical telescope installed at Mount Palomar was designed to record a well-focused image of a large section of the sky on 14-inch square glass plates, bent into a section of a sphere using vacuum pressure.

To summarize, focusing aberrations occur when Maxwell's Rule 1 is broken: the image appears blurred because rays coming from a single point in the object are focused into a *disk* rather than a single point in the image plane. Distortion occurs when Rule 2 is broken, due to a change in image magnification (or rotation) with position in the object plane. Curvature of field occurs when Rule 3 is broken, due to a change in focusing power with position in the object plane.

## 2.2 Imaging in Light Optics

Because electron optics makes use of many of the concepts of light optics, we will quickly review some of the basic optical principles. In light optics, we can employ a glass lens for focusing, based on the property of **refraction**: deviation in direction of a light ray at a boundary where the **refractive index** changes. Refractive index is inversely related to the *speed* of light, which is  $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$  m/s in vacuum (and almost the same in air) but  $c/n$  in a transparent material (such as glass) of refractive index  $n$ . If the angle of incidence (between the ray and the perpendicular to an air/glass interface) is  $\theta_1$  in air ( $n_1 \approx 1$ ), the corresponding value  $\theta_2$  in glass ( $n_2 \approx 1.5$ ) is smaller by an amount given by Snell's law:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2 \quad (2.1)$$

Refraction can be demonstrated by means of a glass prism; see Fig. 2-3. The total deflection angle  $\alpha$ , due to refraction at the air/glass *and* the glass/air interfaces, is independent of the thickness of the glass, but increases with increasing prism angle  $\phi$ . For  $\phi = 0$ , corresponding to a flat sheet of glass, there is no overall angular deflection ( $\alpha = 0$ ).

A **convex lens** can be regarded as a prism whose angle increases with distance away from the optic axis. Therefore, rays that arrive at the lens far from the optic axis are deflected more than those that arrive close to the axis (the so-called **paraxial** rays). To a first approximation, the deflection of a ray is proportional to its distance from the optic axis (at the lens), as needed to make rays starting from an on-axis object point *converge* toward a single (on-axis) point in the image (Fig. 2-4) and therefore satisfy the first of Maxwell's rules for image formation.

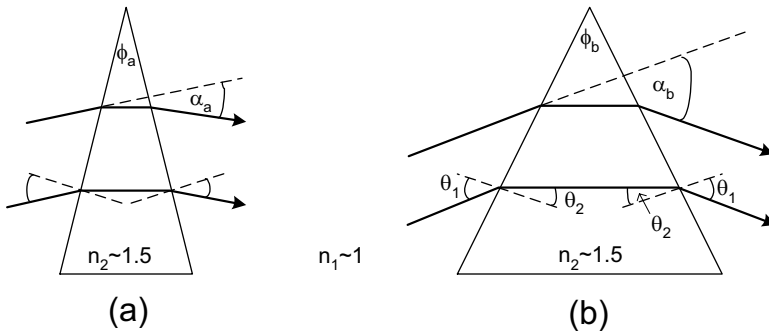


Figure 2-3. Light refracted by a glass prism (a) of small angle  $\phi_a$  and (b) of large angle  $\phi_b$ . Note that the angle of deflection  $\alpha$  is independent of the glass thickness but increases with increasing prism angle.

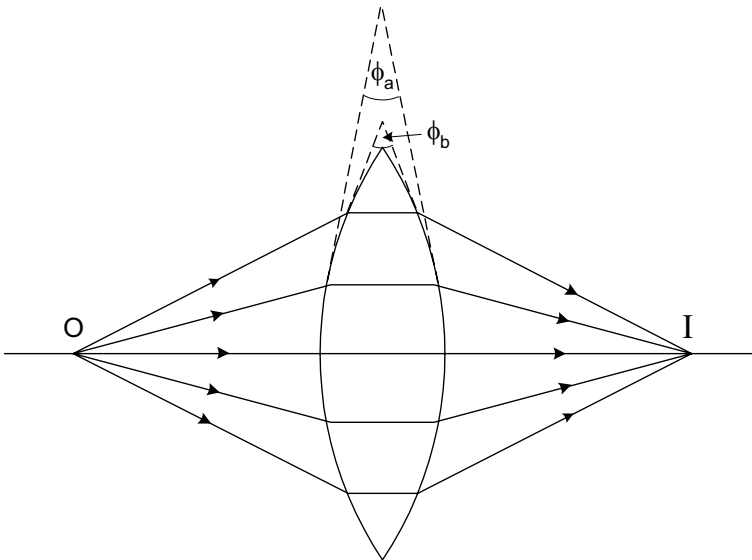


Figure 2-4. A convex lens focusing rays from axial object point O to an axial image point I .

In Fig. 2-4, we have shown only rays that originate from a *single point* in the object, which happens to lie on the optic axis. In practice, rays originate from all points in the two-dimensional object and may travel at various angles relative to the optic axis. A ray diagram that showed *all* of these rays



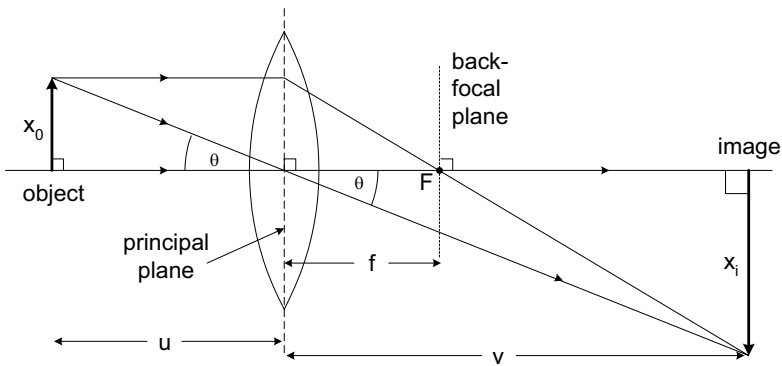


Figure 2-5. A thin-lens ray diagram, in which bending of light rays is imagined to occur at the mid-plane of the lens (dashed vertical line). These special rays define the focal length  $f$  of the lens and the location of the back-focal plane (dotted vertical line).

would be highly confusing, so in practice it is sufficient to show just a few *special* rays, as in Fig. 2-5.

One special ray is the one that travels *along* the optic axis. Because it passes through the center of the lens, where the prism angle is zero, this ray does not deviate from a straight line. Similarly, an oblique ray that leaves the object at a distance  $X_0$  from the optic axis but happens to pass through the *center of the lens*, remains unchanged in direction. A third example of a special ray is one that leaves the object at distance  $X_0$  from the axis and travels *parallel* to the optic axis. The lens bends this ray toward the optic axis, so that it crosses the axis at point  $F$ , a distance  $f$  (the **focal length**) from the center of the lens. The plane, perpendicular to the optic axis and passing through  $F$ , is known as the **back-focal plane** of the lens.

In drawing ray diagrams, we are using **geometric optics** to depict the image formation. Light is represented by rays rather than waves, and so we ignore any diffraction effects (which would require **physical optics**).

It is convenient if we can assume that the bending of light rays takes place at a single plane (known as the **principal plane**) perpendicular to the optic axis (dashed line in Fig. 2-5). This assumption is reasonable if the radii of curvature of the lens surfaces are large compared to the focal length, which implies that the lens is *physically* thin, and is therefore known as the **thin-lens approximation**. Within this approximation, the object distance  $u$  and the image distance  $v$  (both measured from the principal plane) are related to the focal length  $f$  by the thin-lens equation:

$$1/u + 1/v = 1/f \quad (2.2)$$

We can define image magnification as the ratio of the lengths  $X_i$  and  $X_o$ , measured perpendicular to the optic axis. Because the two triangles defined in Fig. 2-5 are similar (both contain a right angle and the angle  $\theta$ ), the ratios of their horizontal and vertical dimensions must be equal. In other words,

$$v/u = X_i/X_o = M \quad (2.3)$$

From Fig. 2-5, we see that if a single lens forms a **real image** (one that could be viewed by inserting a screen at the appropriate plane), this image is *inverted*, equivalent to a  $180^\circ$  rotation about the optic axis. If a second lens is placed beyond this real image, the latter acts as an *object* for the *second* lens, which produces a *second* real image that is upright (not inverted) relative to the original object. The location of this second image is given by applying Eq. (2.2) with appropriate new values of  $u$  and  $v$ , while the additional magnification produced by the second lens is given by applying Eq. (2.3). The *total* magnification (between second image and original object) is then the *product* of the magnification factors of the two lenses.

If the second lens is placed *within* the image distance of the first, a real image cannot be formed but, the first lens is said to form a **virtual image**, which acts as a virtual *object* for the second lens (having a *negative* object distance  $u$ ). In this situation, the first lens produces *no* image inversion. A familiar example is a magnifying glass, held within its focal length of the object; there is no inversion and the only real image is that produced on the retina of the eye, which the brain *interprets* as upright.

Most glass lenses have *spherical* surfaces (sections of a sphere) because these are the easiest to make by grinding and polishing. Such lenses suffer from **spherical aberration**, meaning that rays arriving at the lens at larger distances from the optic axis are focused to points that differ from the focal point of the paraxial rays. Each image point then becomes a disk of confusion, and the image produced on any given plane is blurred (reduced in resolution, as discussed in Chapter 1). *Aspherical* lenses have their surfaces tailored to the precise shape required for ideal focusing (for a given object distance) but are more expensive to produce.

**Chromatic aberration** arises when the light being focused has more than one wavelength present. A common example is white light that contains a continuous range of wavelengths between its red and violet components. Because the refractive index of glass varies with wavelength (called **dispersion**, as it allows a glass prism to *separate* the component colors of the white light), the focal length  $f$  and the image distance  $v$  are slightly different for each wavelength present. Again, each object point is broadened into a disk of confusion and image sharpness is reduced.

### 2.3. Imaging with Electrons

Electron optics has much in common with light optics. We can imagine individual electrons leaving an object and being focused into an image, analogous to visible-light photons. As a result of this analogy, each electron trajectory is often referred to as a *ray* path.

To obtain the equivalent of a convex lens for electrons, we must arrange for the amount of deflection to increase with increasing deviation of the electron ray from the optic axis. For such focusing, we cannot rely on refraction by a material such as glass, as electrons are strongly scattered and absorbed soon after entering a solid. Instead, we take advantage of the fact that the electron has an electrostatic charge and is therefore deflected by an electric field. Alternatively, we can use the fact that the electrons in a beam are moving; the beam is therefore equivalent to an electric current in a wire, and can be deflected by an applied magnetic field.

#### Electrostatic lenses

The most straightforward example of an electric field is the uniform field produced between two parallel conducting plates. An electron entering such a field would experience a constant force, regardless of its trajectory (ray path). This arrangement is suitable for *deflecting* an electron beam, as in a cathode-ray tube, but not for focusing.

The simplest electrostatic *lens* consists of a circular conducting electrode (disk or tube) connected to a negative potential and containing a circular hole (aperture) centered about the optic axis. An electron passing *along* the optic axis is repelled equally from all points on the electrode and therefore suffers no deflection, whereas an off-axis electron is repelled by the negative charge that lies closest to it and is therefore deflected back toward the axis, as in Fig. 2-6. To a first approximation, the deflection angle is proportional to displacement from the optic axis and a point source of electrons is focused to a single image point.

A practical form of electrostatic lens (known as a **unipotential** or *einzel* lens, because electrons enter and leave it at the same potential) uses additional electrodes placed before and after, to limit the extent of the electric field produced by the central electrode, as illustrated in Fig. 2-5. Note that the electrodes, and therefore the electric fields which give rise to the focusing, have cylindrical or **axial symmetry**, which ensures that the focusing force depends only on *radial* distance of an electron from the axis and is independent of its *azimuthal* direction *around* the axis.

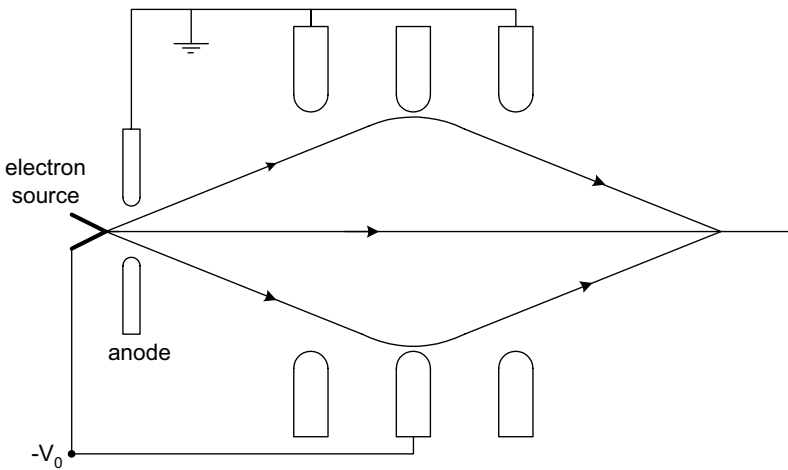


Figure 2-6. Electrons emitted from an electron source, accelerated through a potential difference  $V_0$  toward an anode and then focused by a unipotential electrostatic lens. The electrodes, seen here in cross section, are circular disks containing round holes (apertures) with a common axis, the optic axis of the lens.

Electrostatic lenses have been used in cathode-ray tubes and television picture tubes, to ensure that the electrons emitted from a heated filament are focused back into a small spot on the phosphor-coated inside face of the tube. Although some early electron microscopes used electrostatic lenses, modern electron-beam instruments use electromagnetic lenses that do not require high-voltage insulation and have somewhat lower aberrations.

### Magnetic lenses

To focus an electron beam, an electromagnetic lens employs the magnetic field produced by a coil carrying a direct current. As in the electrostatic case, a *uniform* field (applied perpendicular to the beam) would produce overall deflection but no focusing action. To obtain focusing, we need a field with axial symmetry, similar to that of the einzel lens. Such a field is generated by a short coil, as illustrated in Fig. 2-7a. As the electron passes through this non-uniform magnetic field, the force acting on it varies in both magnitude and direction, so it must be represented by a vector quantity  $\mathbf{F}$ . According to electromagnetic theory,

$$\mathbf{F} = -e(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \quad (2.4)$$

In Eq. (2.4),  $-e$  is the negative charge of the electron,  $\mathbf{v}$  is its velocity vector and  $\mathbf{B}$  is the magnetic field, representing both the magnitude  $B$  of the field (or induction, measured in Tesla) and its direction. The symbol  $\times$  indicates a

cross-product or **vector product** of  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ ; this mathematical operator gives Eq. (2.4) the following two properties.

1. The direction of  $\mathbf{F}$  is *perpendicular* to both  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ . Consequently,  $\mathbf{F}$  has *no* component in the direction of motion, implying that the electron speed  $v$  (the *magnitude* of the velocity  $\mathbf{v}$ ) remains constant at all times. But because the direction of  $\mathbf{B}$  (and possibly  $\mathbf{v}$ ) changes continuously, so does the direction of the magnetic force.
2. The magnitude  $F$  of the force is given by:

$$F = e v B \sin(\varepsilon) \tag{2.5}$$

where  $\varepsilon$  is the instantaneous angle between  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  at the location of the electron. Because  $B$  (and possibly  $v$ ) changes continuously as an electron passes through the field, so does  $F$ . Note that for an electron traveling along the coil axis,  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are always in the axial direction, giving  $\varepsilon = 0$  and  $F = 0$  at every point, implying no deviation of the ray path from a straight line. Therefore, the symmetry axis of the magnetic field is the optical axis.

For non-axial trajectories, the motion of the electron is more complicated. It can be analyzed in detail by using Eq. (2.4) in combination with Newton's second law ( $\mathbf{F} = m \, d\mathbf{v}/dt$ ). Such analysis is simplified by considering  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  in terms of their vector components. Although we could take components parallel to three perpendicular axes ( $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ ), it makes more sense to recognize from the outset that the magnetic field possesses axial (cylindrical)

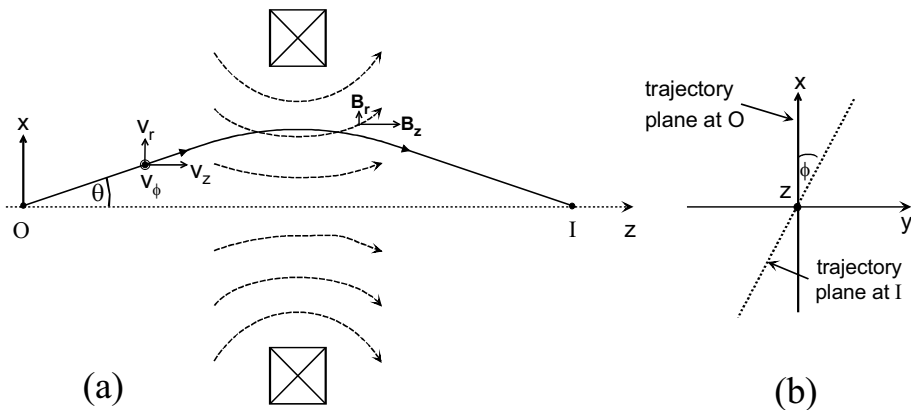


Figure 2-7. (a) Magnetic flux lines (dashed curves) produced by a short coil, seen here in cross section, together with the trajectory of an electron from an axial object point O to the equivalent image point I. (b) View along the  $z$ -direction, showing rotation  $\phi$  of the plane of the electron trajectory, which is also the rotation angle for an extended image produced at I.

symmetry and use cylindrical coordinates:  $z$ ,  $r$  (= radial distance away from the  $z$ -axis) and  $\phi$  (= azimuthal angle, representing the direction of the radial vector  $\mathbf{r}$  relative to the plane of the initial trajectory). Therefore, as shown in Fig. (2-7a),  $v_z$ ,  $v_r$  and  $v_\phi$  are the axial, radial, and tangential components of electron velocity, while  $B_z$  and  $B_r$  are the axial and radial components of magnetic field. Equation (2.5) can then be rewritten to give the tangential, radial, and axial components of the magnetic force on an electron:

$$F_\phi = -e(v_z B_r) + e(B_z v_r) \quad (2.6a)$$

$$F_r = -e(v_\phi B_z) \quad (2.6b)$$

$$F_z = e(v_\phi B_r) \quad (2.6c)$$

Let us trace the path of an electron that starts from an axial point O and enters the field at an angle  $\theta$ , defined in Fig. 2-7, relative to the symmetry ( $z$ ) axis. As the electron approaches the field, the main component is  $B_r$  and the predominant force comes from the term ( $v_z B_r$ ) in Eq. (2.6a). Since  $B_r$  is negative (field lines *approach* the  $z$ -axis), this contribution ( $-e v_z B_r$ ) to  $F_\phi$  is positive, meaning that the tangential force  $F_\phi$  is clockwise, as viewed along the  $+z$  direction. As the electron approaches the center of the field ( $z = 0$ ), the magnitude of  $B_r$  decreases but the second term  $e(B_z v_r)$  in Eq. (2.6a), also positive, increases. So as a result of both terms in Eq. (2.6a), the electron starts to spiral through the field, acquiring an increasing tangential velocity  $v_\phi$  directed *out* of the plane of Fig. (2-7a). Resulting from this acquired tangential component, a new force  $F_r$  starts to act on the electron. According to Eq. (2.6b), this force is negative (toward the  $z$ -axis), therefore we have a focusing action: the non-uniform magnetic field acts like a convex lens.

Provided that the radial force  $F_r$  toward the axis is large enough, the radial motion of the electron will be *reversed* and the electron will approach the  $z$ -axis. Then  $v_r$  becomes negative and the *second* term in Eq. (2.6a) becomes negative. And after the electron passes the  $z = 0$  plane (the center of the lens), the field lines start to diverge so that  $B_r$  becomes positive and the *first* term in Eq. (2.6a) also becomes negative. As a result,  $F_\phi$  becomes negative (reversed in direction) and the tangential velocity  $v_\phi$  falls, as shown in Fig. 2-8c; by the time the electron leaves the field, its spiraling motion is reduced to zero. However, the electron is now traveling in a plane that has been *rotated* relative to its original ( $x$ - $z$ ) plane; see Fig. 2-7b.

This rotation effect is *not* depicted in Fig (2.7a) or in the other ray diagrams in this book, where for convenience we plot the radial distance  $r$  of the electron (from the axis) as a function of its axial distance  $z$ . This common convention allows the use of two-dimensional rather than three-dimensional diagrams; by effectively suppressing (or ignoring) the rotation effect, we can draw ray diagrams that resemble those of light optics. Even so, it is

important to remember that the trajectory has a rotational component whenever an electron passes through an axially-symmetric magnetic lens.

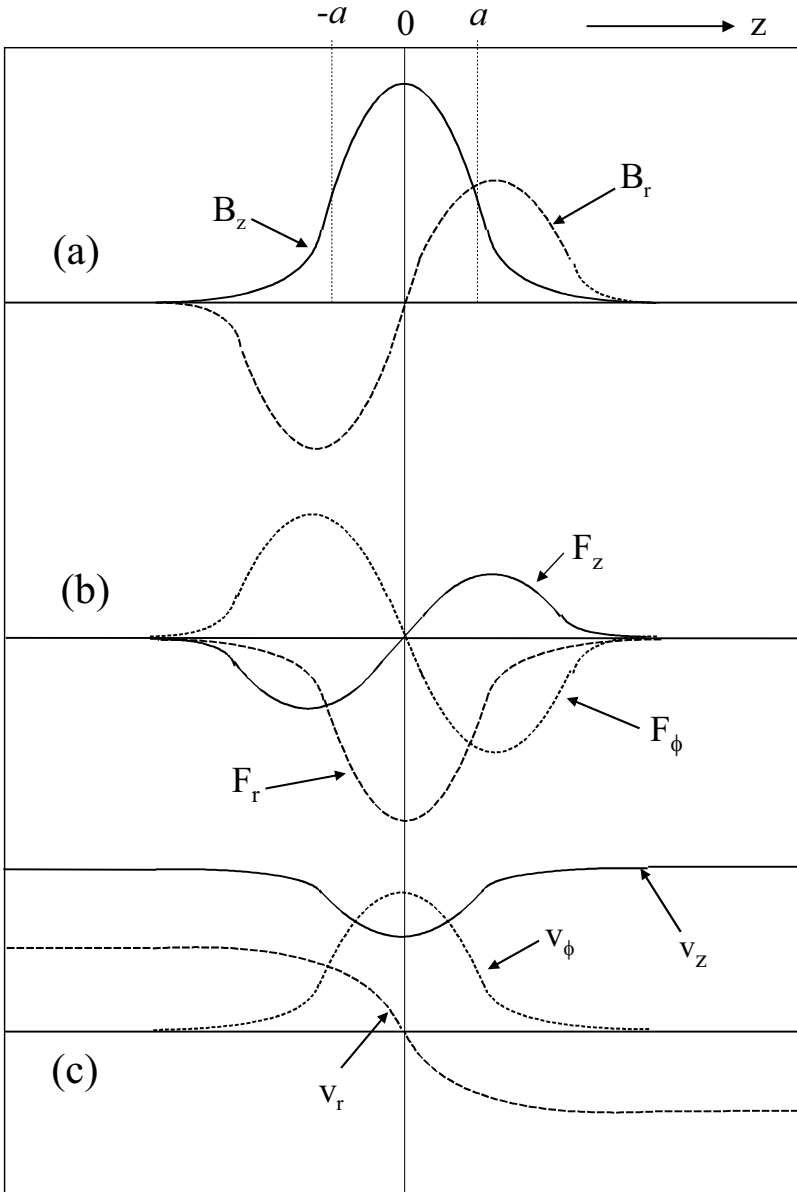


Figure 2-8. Qualitative behavior of the radial ( $r$ ), axial ( $z$ ), and azimuthal ( $\phi$ ) components of (a) magnetic field, (b) force on an electron, and (c) the resulting electron velocity, as a function of the  $z$ -coordinate of an electron going through the electron lens shown in Fig. 2-7a.

As we said earlier, the overall speed  $v$  of an electron in a magnetic field remains constant, so the appearance of tangential and radial components of velocity implies that  $v_z$  must decrease, as depicted in Fig. 2-8c. This is in accordance with Eq. (2.6c), which predicts the existence of a third force  $F_z$  which is negative for  $z < 0$  (because  $B_r < 0$ ) and therefore acts in the  $-z$  direction. After the electron passes the center of the lens,  $z$ ,  $B_r$  and  $F_z$  all become positive and  $v_z$  increases back to its original value. The fact that the electron speed is constant contrasts with the case of the einzel electrostatic lens, where an electron slows down as it passes through the retarding field.

We have seen that the radial component of magnetic induction  $B_r$  plays an important part in electron focusing. If a long coil (solenoid) were used to generate the field, this component would be present only in the **fringing field** at either end. (The uniform field inside the solenoid can focus electrons radiating from a point source but not a broad beam of electrons traveling parallel to its axis). So rather than using an *extended* magnetic field, we should make the field as short as possible. This can be done by partially enclosing the current-carrying coil by ferromagnetic material such as soft iron, as shown in Fig. 2-9a. Due to its high permeability, the iron carries most of the magnetic flux lines. However, the magnetic circuit contains a **gap** filled with nonmagnetic material, so that flux lines appear within the internal **bore** of the lens. The magnetic field experienced by the electron beam can be increased and further concentrated by the use of ferromagnetic (soft iron) **polepieces** of small internal diameter, as illustrated in Fig. 2-9b. These polepieces are machined to high precision to ensure that the magnetic field has the high degree of axial symmetry required for good focusing.

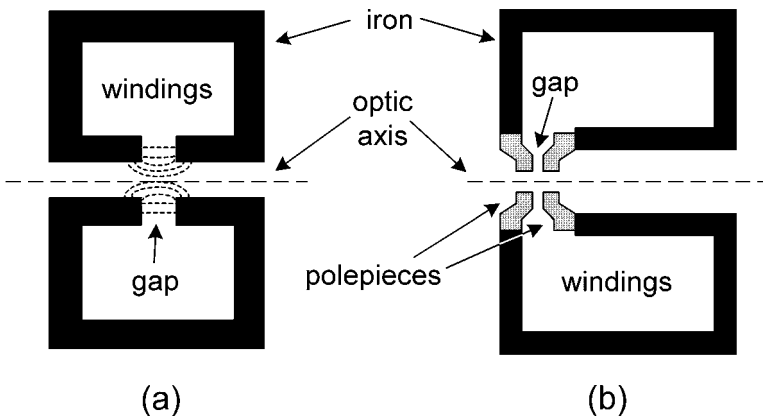


Figure 2-9. (a) Use of ferromagnetic soft iron to concentrate magnetic field within a small volume. (b) Use of ferromagnetic polepieces to further concentrate the field.



A cross section through a typical magnetic lens is shown in Fig. 2-10. Here the optic axis is shown vertical, as is nearly always the case in practice. A typical electron-beam instrument contains several lenses, and stacking them vertically (in a lens **column**) provides a mechanically robust structure in which the weight of each lens acts parallel to the optic axis. There is then no tendency for the column to gradually bend under its own weight, which would lead to lens **misalignment** (departure of the polepieces from a straight-line configuration). The strong magnetic field (up to about 2 Tesla) in each lens gap is generated by a relatively large coil that contains many turns of wire and typically carries a few amps of direct current. To remove heat generated in the coil (due to its resistance), water flows into and out of each lens. Water cooling ensures that the temperature of the lens column reaches a stable value, not far from room temperature, so that thermal expansion (which could lead to column misalignment) is minimized. Temperature changes are also reduced by controlling the temperature of the cooling water within a refrigeration system that circulates water through the lenses in a closed cycle and removes the heat generated.

Rubber **o-rings** (of circular cross section) provide an airtight seal between the interior of the lens column, which is connected to vacuum pumps, and the exterior, which is at atmospheric pressure. The absence of air in the vicinity of the electron beam is essential to prevent collisions and scattering of the electrons by air molecules. Some internal components (such as apertures) must be located close to the optic axis but adjusted in position by external controls. Sliding o-ring seals or thin-metal bellows are used to allow this motion while preserving the internal vacuum.

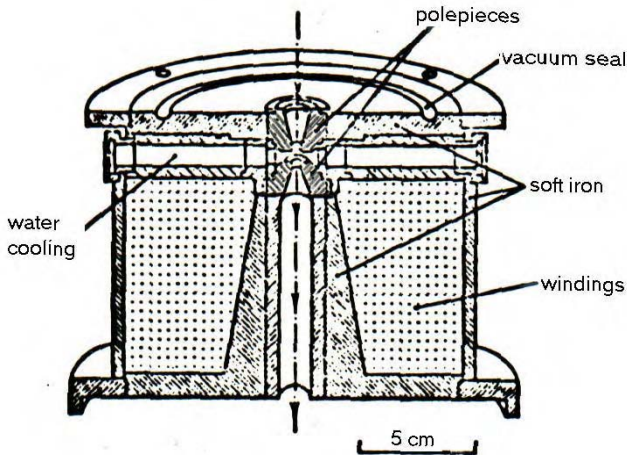


Figure 2-10. Cross section through a magnetic lens whose optic axis (dashed line) is vertical.

## 2.4 Focusing Properties of a Thin Magnetic Lens

The use of ferromagnetic polepieces results in a focusing field that extends only a few millimeters along the optic axis, so that to a first approximation the lens may be considered thin. Deflection of the electron trajectory can then be considered to take place at a single plane (the principal plane), which allows thin-lens formulas such as Eq. (2.2) and Eq. (2.3) to be used to describe the optical properties of the lens.

The thin-lens approximation also simplifies analysis of the effect of the magnetic forces acting on a charged particle, leading to a simple expression for the **focusing power** (reciprocal of focal length) of a magnetic lens:

$$1/f = [e^2/(8mE_0)] \int B_z^2 dz \quad (2.7)$$

As we are considering electrons, the particle charge  $e$  is  $1.6 \times 10^{-19}$  C and mass  $m = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}$  kg;  $E_0$  represents the kinetic energy of the particles passing through the lens, expressed in Joule, and given by  $E_0 = (e)(V_0)$  where  $V_0$  is the potential difference used to accelerate the electrons from rest. The integral ( $\int B_z^2 dz$ ) can be interpreted as the total area under a graph of  $B_z^2$  plotted against distance  $z$  along the optic axis,  $B_z$  being the  $z$ -component of magnetic field (in Tesla). Because the field is non-uniform,  $B_z$  is a function of  $z$  and also depends on the lens current and the polepiece geometry.

There are two simple cases in which the integral in Eq. (2.7) can be solved analytically. One of these corresponds to the assumption that  $B_z$  has a constant value  $B_0$  in a region  $-a < z < a$  but falls abruptly to zero outside this region. The total area is then that of a rectangle and the integral becomes  $2aB_0^2$ . This rectangular distribution is unphysical but would approximate the field produced by a long solenoid of length  $2a$ .

For a typical electron lens, a more realistic assumption is that  $B$  increases smoothly toward its maximum value  $B_0$  (at the center of the lens) according to a symmetric *bell-shaped* curve described by the **Lorentzian** function:

$$B_z = B_0 / (1 + z^2/a^2) \quad (2.8)$$

As we can see by substituting  $z = a$  in Eq. (2.8),  $a$  is the half-width at half maximum (HWHM) of a graph of  $B_z$  versus  $z$ , meaning the distance (away from the central maximum) at which  $B_z$  falls to *half* of its maximum value; see Fig. 2-8. Alternatively,  $2a$  is the *full* width at half maximum (FWHM) of the field: the length (along the optic axis) over which the field exceeds  $B_0/2$ . If Eq. (2.8) is valid, the integral in Eq. (2.7) becomes  $(\pi/2)aB_0^2$  and the focusing power of the lens is

$$1/f = (\pi/16) [e^2/(mE_0)] aB_0^2 \quad (2.9)$$

As an example, we can take  $B_0 = 0.3$  Tesla and  $a = 3$  mm. If the electrons entering the lens have been accelerated from rest by applying a voltage  $V_0 = 100$  kV, we have  $E_0 = eV_0 = 1.6 \times 10^{-14}$  J. Equation (2.9) then gives the focusing power  $1/f = 93 \text{ m}^{-1}$  and focal length  $f = 11$  mm. Because  $f$  turns out to be less than twice the full-width of the field ( $2a = 6$  mm) we might question the accuracy of the thin-lens approximation in this case. In fact, more exact calculations (Reimer, 1997) show that the thin-lens formula underestimates  $f$  by about 14% for these parameters. For larger  $B_0$  and  $a$ , Eqs. (2.7) and (2.9) become unrealistic (see Fig. 2-13 later). In other words, strong lenses must be treated as *thick* lenses, for which (as in light optics) the mathematical description is more complicated.

In addition, our thin-lens formula for  $1/f$  is based on non-relativistic mechanics, in which the mass of the electron is assumed to be equal to its rest mass. The relativistic increase in mass (predicted by Einstein's Special Relativity) can be incorporated by replacing  $E_0$  by  $E_0 (1 + V_0 / 1022 \text{ kV})$  in Eq. (2.9). This modification increases  $f$  by about 1% for each 10 kV of accelerating voltage, that is by 10% for  $V_0 = 100$  kV, 20% for  $V_0 = 200$  kV, and so on.

Although only approximate, Eq. (2.9) enables us to see how the focusing power of a magnetic lens depends on the strength and spatial extent of the magnetic field and on certain properties of particles being imaged (their kinetic energy, charge and mass). Because the kinetic energy  $E_0$  appears in the denominator of Eq. (2.7), focusing power decreases as the accelerating voltage is increased. As might be expected intuitively, faster electrons are deflected less in the magnetic field.

Because  $B_0$  is proportional to the current supplied to the lens windings, changing this current allows the focusing power of the lens to be varied. This ability to vary the focal length means that an electron image can be focused by adjusting the lens current. However, it also implies that the lens current must be highly stabilized (typically to within a few parts per million) to prevent *unwanted* changes in focusing power, which would cause the image to drift out of focus. In *light optics*, change in  $f$  can only be achieved mechanically: by changing the curvature of the lens surfaces (in the case of the eye) or by changing the spacing between elements of a compound lens, as in the zoom lens of a camera.

When discussing qualitatively the action of a magnetic field, we saw that the electrons execute a spiral motion, besides being deflected back toward the optic axis. As a result, the plane containing the exit ray is rotated through an angle  $\phi$  relative to the plane containing the incoming electron. Again making a thin-lens approximation ( $a \ll f$ ) and assuming a Lorentzian field distribution, the equations of motion can be solved to give:

$$\phi = [e/(8mE_0)^{1/2}] \int B_z dz = [e/(8mE_0)^{1/2}] \pi a B_0 \quad (2.10)$$

Using  $B_0 = 0.3$  T,  $a = 3$  mm, and  $V_0 = 100$  kV as before:  $\phi = 1.33$  rad =  $76^\circ$ , so the rotation is not unimportant. Note that this rotation is *in addition* to the inversion about the  $z$ -axis that occurs when a real image is formed (Fig. 2-5). In other words, the rotation of a *real* electron image, relative to the object, is actually  $\pi \pm \phi$  radians.

Note that the image rotation would reverse (*e.g.*, go from clockwise to counterclockwise) if the current through the lens windings were reversed, because  $B_z$  (and therefore  $\phi$ ) would be reversed in sign. On the other hand, reversing the current does *not* change the focusing power, as the integral in Eq. (2.7) involves  $B_z^2$ , which is always positive. In fact, all of the terms in Eq. (2.7) are positive, implying that we cannot use an axially-symmetric magnetic field to produce the electron-optical equivalent of a diverging (concave) lens, for which the focal length  $f$  would have to be negative.

Equations (2.7) – (2.10) apply equally well to the focusing of other charged particles such as protons and ions, provided  $e$  and  $m$  are replaced by the appropriate charge and mass. Equation (2.7) shows that, for the same lens current and kinetic energy (same potential used to accelerate the particles), the focusing power of a magnetic lens is much less for these particles, whose mass is thousands of times larger than that of the electron. For this reason, **ion optics** commonly involves *electrostatic* lenses.

## 2.5 Comparison of Magnetic and Electrostatic Lenses

Some of the differences between electrostatic and magnetic lenses (of axial symmetry) are summarized in Table 2-1 and will now be discussed in turn.

Because the electrostatic force on an electron is parallel (or in the case of an electron, antiparallel) to the field and because axially symmetric fields have no tangential component, electrostatic lenses offer the convenience of no image rotation. Their low weight and near-zero power consumption has made them attractive for space-based equipment, such as planetary probes.

The ability of electrostatic lenses to operate with voltages that slowly change (drift) or contain fluctuating components (ripple) is a result of the fact that the voltage supply that is connected to the lens can also be used to accelerate the electrons, as illustrated in Fig. 2-6. If the accelerating voltage  $V_0$  increases, the electrons travel faster; but as it requires a higher lens voltage to focus faster electrons, the two effects cancel (to first order). Electrostatic lenses were therefore preferred in some of the early electron

microscopes, at a time when high-voltage supplies were less stable than is possible today.

On the other hand, the fact that a voltage comparable to the accelerating voltage  $V_0$  must be applied to an electrostatic lens means that insulation and safety problems become severe for  $V_0 > 50$  kV. Because higher accelerating voltages permit better image resolution, magnetic lenses are generally preferred for electron microscopy. Magnetic lenses also provide somewhat lower aberrations, for the same focal length, further improving the image resolution. As we will see later in this chapter, lens aberrations are also reduced by making the focal length of the objective lens small, implying a magnetic *immersion* lens with the specimen present *within* the lens field. Such a concept is problematic for an electrostatic objective, where introducing a conducting specimen could greatly modify the electric-field distribution.

Table 2-1. Comparison of electrostatic and electromagnetic lens designs.

Advantages of an electrostatic lens	Advantages of a magnetic lens
No image rotation	Lower lens aberrations
Lightweight, consumes no power	No high-voltage insulation required
Highly stable voltage unnecessary	Can be used as an immersion lens
Easier focusing of ions	

## 2.6 Defects of Electron Lenses

For a microscope, the most important focusing defects are lens *aberrations*, as they reduce the spatial resolution of the image, even when it has been optimally focused. We will discuss two kinds of **axial aberrations**, those that lead to image blurring even for object points that lie *on the optic axis*. Similar aberrations occur in light optics.

### Spherical aberration

The effect of spherical aberration can be defined by means of a diagram that shows electrons arriving at a thin lens after traveling parallel to the optic axis but not necessarily along it; see Fig. 2-11. Those that arrive very *close to* the optic axis (*paraxial* rays, represented by dashed lines in Fig. 2-11) are brought to a focus F, a distance  $f$  from the center of the lens, at the **Gaussian**

image plane. When spherical aberration is present, electrons arriving at an appreciable distance  $x$  from the axis are focused to a different point  $F_1$  located at a shorter distance  $f_1$  from the center of the lens.

We might expect the axial shift in focus ( $\Delta f = f - f_1$ ) to depend on the initial  $x$ -coordinate of the electron and on the degree of imperfection of the lens focusing. Without knowing the details of this imperfection, we can represent the  $x$ -dependence in terms of a power series:

$$\Delta f = c_2 x^2 + c_4 x^4 + \text{higher even powers of } x \quad (2.11)$$

with  $c_2$  and  $c_4$  as unknown coefficients. Note that odd powers of  $x$  have been omitted: provided the magnetic field that focuses the electrons is axially symmetric, the deflection angle  $\alpha$  will be identical for electrons that arrive with coordinates  $+x$  and  $-x$  (as in Fig. 2-11). This would not be the case if terms involving  $x$  or  $x^3$  were present in Eq. (2.11).

From the geometry of the large right-angled triangle in Fig. 2-11,

$$x = f_1 \tan \alpha \approx f \tan \alpha \approx f \alpha \quad (2.12)$$

Here we have assumed that  $x \ll f$ , taking the angle  $\alpha$  to be small, and also that  $\Delta f \ll f$ , supposing spherical aberration to be a *small* effect for electrons that deviate by no more than a few degrees from the optic axis. These approximations are reasonable for high-voltage electron optics.

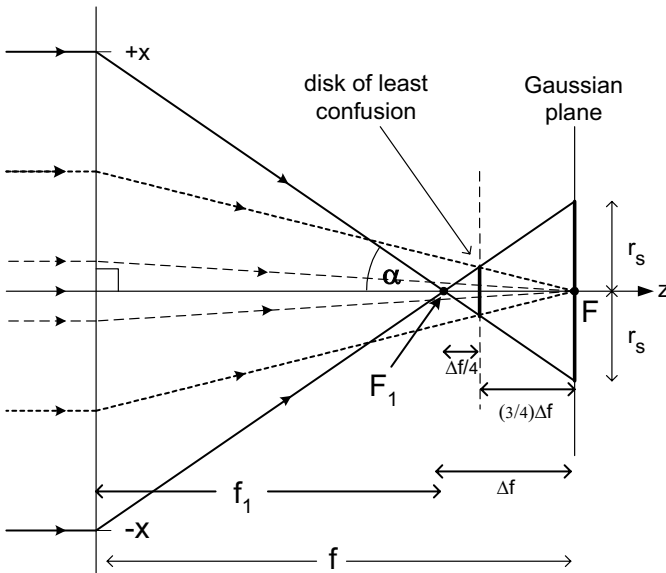


Figure 2-11. Definition of the disk of confusion due to spherical aberration, in terms of the focusing of parallel rays by a thin lens.

When these non-paraxial electrons arrive at the Gaussian image plane, they will be displaced radially from the optic axis by an amount  $r_s$  given by:

$$r_s = (\Delta f) \tan \alpha \approx (\Delta f) \alpha \quad (2.13)$$

where we once again assume that  $\alpha$  is small. As small  $\alpha$  implies small  $x$ , we can to a first approximation neglect powers higher than  $x^2$  in Eq. (2.11) and combine this equation with Eqs. (2.12) and (2.13) to give:

$$r_s \approx [c_2 (f\alpha)^2] \alpha = c_2 f^2 \alpha^3 = C_s \alpha^3 \quad (2.14)$$

in which we have combined  $c_2$  and  $f$  into a single constant  $C_s$ , known as the **coefficient of spherical aberration** of the lens. Because  $\alpha$  (in radian) is dimensionless,  $C_s$  has the dimensions of length.

Figure 2-11 illustrates a limited number of off-axis electron trajectories. More typically, we have a broad entrance beam of circular cross-section, with electrons arriving at the lens with all radial displacements (*between* zero and some value  $x$ ) within the  $x$ - $z$  plane (that of the diagram), within the  $y$ - $z$  plane (perpendicular to the diagram), and within all intermediate planes that contain the optic axis. Due to the axial symmetry, all these electrons arrive at the Gaussian image plane *within* the disk of confusion (radius  $r_s$ ). The angle  $\alpha$  now represents the *maximum* angle of the focused electrons, which might be determined by the internal diameter of the lens bore or by a circular aperture placed in the optical system.

Figure 2-11 is directly relevant to a scanning electron microscope (SEM), where the objective lens focuses a near-parallel beam into an electron probe of very small diameter at the specimen. Because the spatial resolution of the secondary-electron image cannot be better than the probe diameter, spherical aberration might be expected to limit the spatial resolution to a value of the order of  $2r_s$ . In fact, this conclusion is too pessimistic. If the specimen is advanced toward the lens, the illuminated disk gets smaller and at a certain location (represented by the dashed vertical line in Fig. 2-11), its diameter has a minimum value ( $= r_s/2$ ) corresponding to the **disk of least confusion**. Advancing the specimen any closer to the lens would make the disk larger, due to contributions from medium-angle rays, shown dotted in Fig. 2-11.

In the case of a transmission electron microscope (TEM), a relatively broad beam of electrons arrives at the specimen, and an objective lens simultaneously images each object point. Figure 2.11 can be made more applicable by first imagining the lens to be weakened slightly, so that F is the Gaussian image of an object point G located at a large but finite distance  $u$  from the lens, as in Fig. 2-12a. Even so, the diagram represents the case of large demagnification ( $u/f \approx M \ll 1$ ), not  $M \gg 1$  as required for a microscope. To describe the TEM situation, we can reverse the ray paths, a

procedure that is permissible in both light and electron optics, resulting in Fig. 2-12b. By adding extra dashed rays as shown, Fig. 2-12b illustrates how electrons emitted from two points a distance  $2r_s$  apart are focused into two magnified disks of confusion in the image (shown on the left) of radius  $Mr_s$  and separation  $2Mr_s$ . Although these disks touch at their periphery, the image would still be recognizable as representing two separate point-like objects in the specimen. If the separation between the object points is now reduced to  $r_s$ , the disks overlap substantially, as in Fig. 2-12c. For a further reduction in spacing, the two separate point objects would no longer be distinguishable from the image, and so we take  $r_s$  as the spherical-aberration limit to the **point resolution** of a TEM objective lens. This approximates to the Rayleigh criterion (Section 1.1); the current-density distribution in the image consists of two overlapping peaks with about 15% dip between them.

Spherical aberration occurs in TEM lenses *after* the objective but is much less important. This situation arises from the fact that each lens *reduces* the maximum angle of electrons (relative to the optic axis) by a factor equal to its magnification (as illustrated in Fig 2.12b), while the spherical-aberration blurring depends on the *third power* of this angle, according to Eq. (2.14).

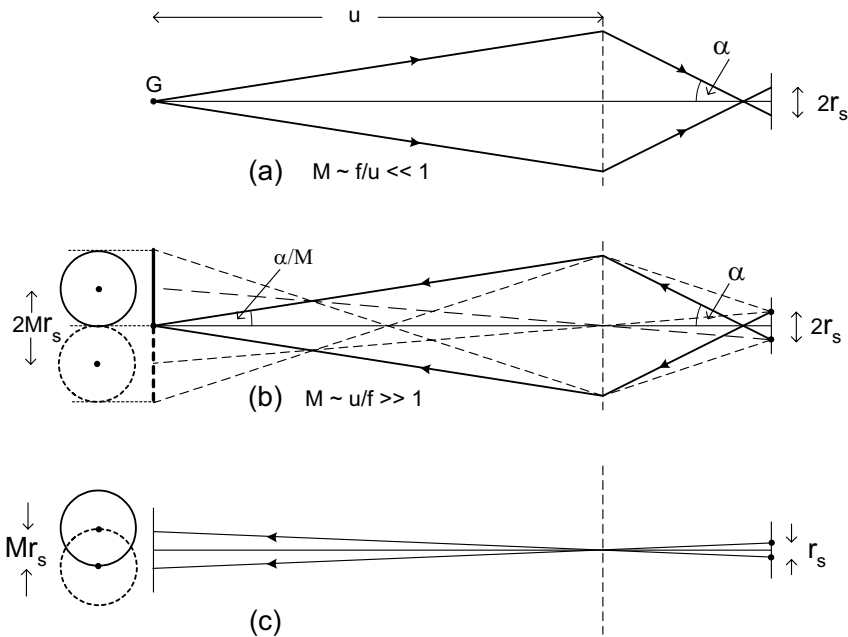


Figure 2-12. (a) Ray diagram similar to Fig. 2-11, with the object distance  $u$  large but finite. (b) Equivalent diagram with the rays reversed, showing two image disks of confusion arising from object points whose separation is  $2r_s$ . (c) Same diagram but with object-point separation reduced to  $r_s$  so that the two points are barely resolved in the image (Rayleigh criterion).



So far, we have said nothing about the *value* of the spherical-aberration coefficient  $C_s$ . On the assumption of a Lorentzian (bell-shaped) field,  $C_s$  can be calculated from a somewhat-complicated formula (Glaeser, 1952). Figure 2.13 shows the calculated  $C_s$  and focal length  $f$  as a function of the maximum field  $B_0$ , for 200kV accelerating voltage and a field half-width of  $a = 1.8$  mm. The thin-lens formula, Eq. (2.9), is seen to be quite good at predicting the focal length of a weak lens (low  $B_0$ ) but becomes inaccurate for a strong lens. For the weak lens,  $C_s \approx f \approx$  several mm; but for a strong lens ( $B_0 = 2$  to 3 T, as used for a TEM objective),  $C_s$  falls to about  $f/4$ . If we take  $f = 2$  mm, so that  $C_s \approx 0.5$  mm, and require a point resolution  $r_s = 1$  nm, the maximum angle of the electrons (relative to the optic axis) must satisfy:  $C_s \alpha^3 \approx r_s$ , giving  $\alpha \approx 10^{-2}$  rad = 10 mrad. This low value justifies our use of small-angle approximations in the preceding analysis.

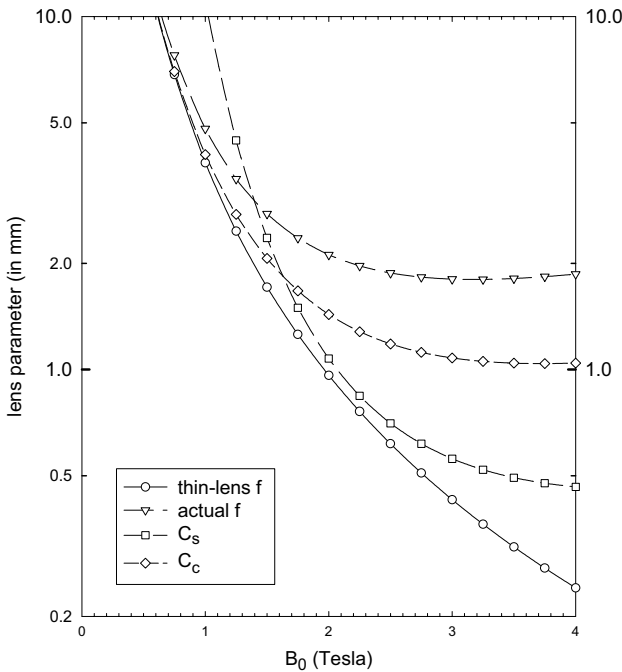


Figure 2-13. Focal length and coefficients of spherical and chromatic aberration for a magnetic lens containing a Lorentzian field with peak field  $B_0$  and half-width  $a = 1.8$  mm, focusing 200keV electrons. Values were calculated from Eq. (2.7) and from Glaeser (1952).

The basic physical properties of a magnetic field dictate that the spherical aberration of an axially-symmetric electron lens cannot be eliminated through careful design of the lens polepieces. However, spherical aberration can be *minimized* by using a strong lens (small  $f$ ). The smallest possible focal length is determined by the maximum field ( $B_0 \approx 2.6$  Tesla) obtainable, limited by magnetic saturation of the lens polepieces. The radius  $r_s$  of the disk of confusion is also reduced by using an aperture in the lens column to limit the maximum angular deviation  $\alpha$  of electrons from the optic axis.

### Chromatic aberration

In light optics, chromatic aberration occurs when there is a spread in the wavelength of the light passing through a lens, coupled with a variation of refractive index with wavelength (dispersion). In the case of an electron, the de Broglie wavelength depends on the particle momentum, and therefore on its kinetic energy  $E_0$ , while Eq. (2.7) shows that the focusing power of a magnetic lens depends inversely on the kinetic energy. So if electrons are present with different kinetic energies, they will be focused at a different distances from a lens; for any image plane, there will be a *chromatic* disk of confusion rather than a point focus. The spread in kinetic energy can arise from several causes.

(1) Different kinetic energies of the electrons emitted from the source. For example, electrons emitted by a heated-filament source have a **thermal spread** ( $\approx kT$ , where  $T$  is the temperature of the emitting surface) due to the statistics of the electron-emission process.

(2) Fluctuations in the potential  $V_0$  applied to accelerate the electrons. Although high-voltage supplies are stabilized as well as possible, there is still some **drift** (slow variation) and **ripple** (alternating component) in the accelerating voltage, and therefore in the kinetic energy  $eV_0$ .

(3) Energy loss due to **inelastic scattering** in the specimen, a process in which energy is transferred from an electron to the specimen. This scattering is also a statistical process: not all electrons lose the same amount of energy, resulting in an energy spread within the transmitted beam. Because the TEM *imaging* lenses focus electrons *after* they have passed through the specimen, inelastic scattering will cause chromatic aberration in the magnified image.

We can estimate the radius of the *chromatic* disk of confusion by the use of Eq. (2.7) and thin-lens geometric optics, ignoring spherical aberration and other lens defects. Consider an axial point source P of electrons (distance  $u$  from the lens) that is focused to a point Q in the image plane (distance  $v$

from the lens) for electrons of energy  $E_0$  as shown in Fig. 2-14. Because  $1/f$  increases as the electron energy decreases, electrons of energy  $E_0 - \Delta E_0$  will have an image distance  $v - \Delta v$  and arrive at the image plane a radial distance  $r_i$  from the optic axis. If the angle  $\beta$  of the arriving electrons is small,

$$r_i = \Delta v \tan \beta \approx \beta \Delta v \quad (2.15)$$

As in the case of spherical aberration, we need to know the  $x$ -displacement of a second point object  $P'$  whose disk of confusion partially overlaps the first, as shown in Fig. 2-14. As previously, we will take the required displacement in the image plane to be *equal* to the disk radius  $r_i$ , which will correspond to a displacement *in the object plane* equal to  $r_c = r_i/M$ , where  $M$  is the image magnification given by:

$$M = v/u = \tan \alpha / \tan \beta \approx \alpha / \beta \quad (2.16)$$

From Eqs. (2.15) and (2.16), we have:

$$r_c \approx \beta \Delta v / M \approx \alpha \Delta v / M^2 \quad (2.17)$$

Assuming a thin lens,  $1/u + 1/v = 1/f$  and taking derivatives of this equation (for a fixed object distance  $u$ ) gives:  $0 + (-2) v^{-2} \Delta v = (-2) f^{-2} \Delta f$ , leading to:

$$\Delta v = (v^2/f^2) \Delta f \quad (2.18)$$

For  $M \gg 1$ , the thin-lens equation,  $1/u + 1/(Mu) = 1/f$ , implies that  $u \approx f$  and  $v \approx Mf$ , so Eq. (2.18) becomes  $\Delta v \approx M^2 \Delta f$  and Eq. (4.7) gives:

$$r_c \approx \alpha \Delta f \quad (2.19)$$

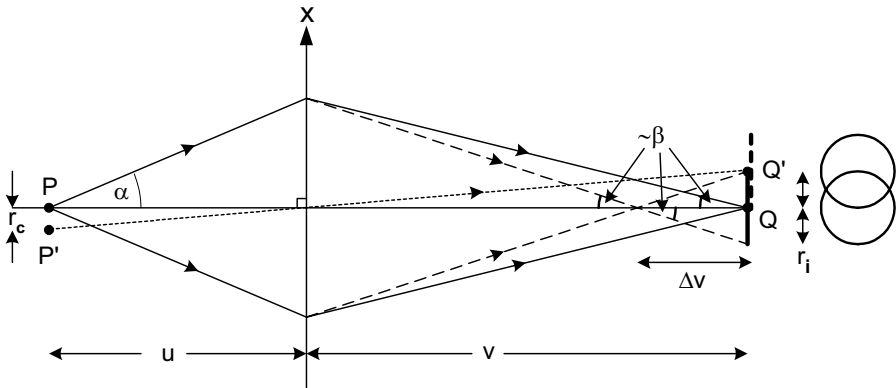


Figure 2-14. Ray diagram illustrating the change in focus and the disk of confusion resulting from chromatic aberration. With two object points, the image disks overlap; the Rayleigh criterion (about 15% reduction in intensity between the current-density maxima) is satisfied when the separation  $PP'$  in the object plane is given by Eq. (2.20).

From Eq. (2.7), the focal length of the lens can be written as  $f = A E_0$  where  $A$  is independent of electron energy, and taking derivatives gives:  $\Delta f = A \Delta E_0 = (f/E_0) \Delta E_0$ . The loss of spatial resolution due to chromatic aberration is therefore:

$$r_c \approx \alpha f (\Delta E_0 / E_0) \quad (2.20)$$

More generally, a **coefficient of chromatic aberration**  $C_c$  is defined by the equation:

$$r_c \approx \alpha C_c (\Delta E_0 / E_0) \quad (2.21)$$

Our analysis has shown that  $C_c = f$  in the thin-lens approximation. A more exact (thick-lens) treatment gives  $C_c$  slightly smaller than  $f$  for a weak lens and typically  $f/2$  for a strong lens; see Fig. 2-13. As in the case of spherical aberration, chromatic aberration cannot be eliminated through lens design but is minimized by making the lens as strong as possible (large focusing power, small  $f$ ) and by using an angle-limiting aperture (restricting  $\alpha$ ). High electron-accelerating voltage (large  $E_0$ ) also reduces the chromatic effect.

### Axial astigmatism

So far we have assumed complete axial symmetry of the magnetic field that focuses the electrons. In practice, lens polepieces cannot be machined with perfect accuracy, and the polepiece material may be slightly inhomogeneous, resulting in local variations in relative permeability. In either case, the departure from cylindrical symmetry will cause the magnetic field at a given radius  $r$  from the  $z$ -axis to depend on the *plane of incidence* of an incoming electron (*i.e.*, on its **azimuthal** angle  $\phi$ , viewed along the  $z$ -axis). According to Eq. (2.9), this difference in magnetic field will give rise to a difference in focusing power, and the lens is said to suffer from **axial astigmatism**.

Figure 2.15a shows electrons leaving an *on-axis* object point P at equal angles to the  $z$ -axis but traveling in the  $x$ - $z$  and  $y$ - $z$  planes. They cross the optic axis at different points,  $F_x$  and  $F_y$ , displaced along the  $z$ -axis. In the case of Fig. 2-15a, the  $x$ -axis corresponds to the *lowest* focusing power and the perpendicular  $y$ -direction corresponds to the *highest* focusing power.

In practice, electrons leave P with *all* azimuthal angles and at all angles (up to  $\alpha$ ) relative to the  $z$ -axis. At the plane containing  $F_y$ , the electrons lie within a **caustic figure** that approximates to an ellipse whose long axis lies parallel to the  $x$ -direction. At  $F_x$  they lie within an ellipse whose long axis points in the  $y$ -direction. At some intermediate plane F, the electrons define a circular disk of confusion of radius  $R$ , rather than a single point. If that plane is used as the image (magnification  $M$ ), astigmatism will limit the point resolution to a value  $R/M$ .

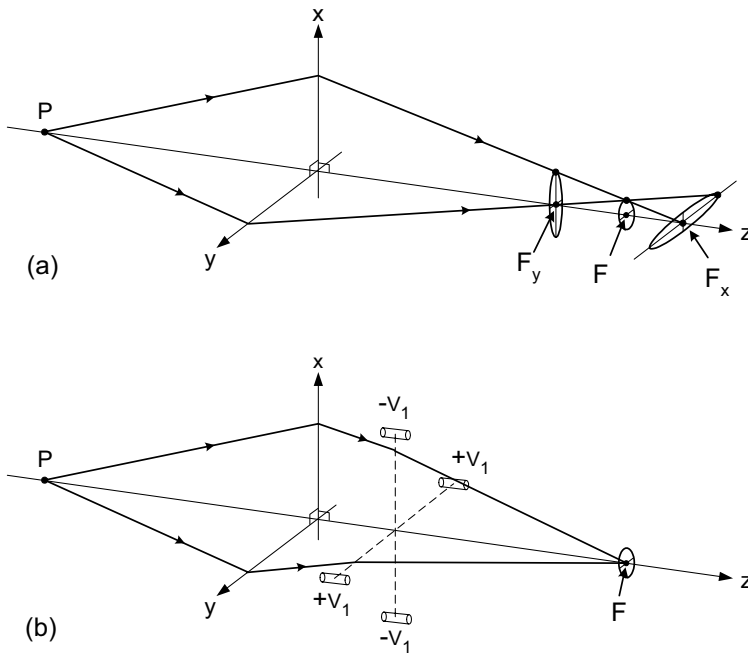


Figure 2-15. (a) Rays leaving an axial image point, focused by a lens (with axial astigmatism) into ellipses centered around  $F_x$  and  $F_y$  or into a circle of radius  $R$  at some intermediate plane. (b) Use of an electrostatic stigmator to correct for the axial astigmatism of an electron lens.

Axial astigmatism also occurs in the human eye, when there is a lack of axial symmetry. It can be *corrected* by wearing lenses whose focal length differs with azimuthal direction by an amount just sufficient to compensate for the azimuthal variation in focusing power of the eyeball. In *electron* optics, the device that corrects for astigmatism is called a **stigmator** and it takes the form of a weak **quadrupole lens**.

An *electrostatic* quadrupole consists of four electrodes, in the form of short conducting rods aligned parallel to the  $z$ -axis and located at equal distances along the  $+x$ ,  $-x$ ,  $+y$ , and  $-y$  directions; see Fig. 2-15b. A power supply generating a voltage  $-V_1$  is connected to the two rods that lie in the  $x$ - $z$  plane and electrons traveling in that plane are repelled *toward* the axis, resulting in a *positive* focusing power (convex-lens effect). A potential  $+V_1$  is applied to the other pair, which therefore *attract* electrons traveling in the  $y$ - $z$  plane and provide a *negative* focusing power in that plane. By combining the stigmator with an astigmatic lens and choosing  $V_1$  appropriately, the focal length of the system in the  $x$ - $z$  and  $y$ - $z$  planes can be made equal; the two foci  $F_x$  and  $F_y$  are brought together to a single point and the axial astigmatism is eliminated, as in Fig. 2-15b.

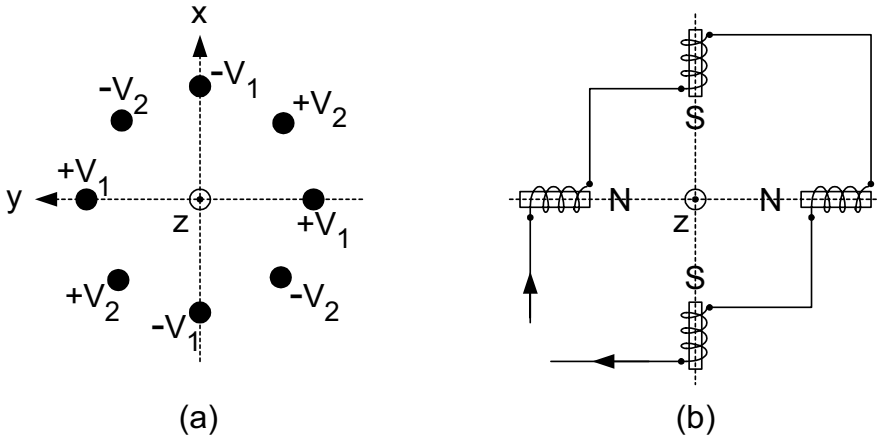


Figure 2-16. (a) Electrostatic stigmator, viewed along the optic axis; (b) magnetic quadrupole, the basis of an electromagnetic stigmator.

In practice, we cannot predict which azimuthal direction corresponds to the smallest or the largest focusing power of an astigmatic lens. Therefore the *direction* of the stigmator correction must be adjustable, as well as its strength. One way of achieving this is to mechanically rotate the quadrupole around the z-axis. A more convenient arrangement is to add four more electrodes, connected to a second power supply that generates potentials of  $+V_2$  and  $-V_2$ , as in Fig. 2-16a. Varying the magnitude and polarity of the two voltage supplies is equivalent to varying the strength and orientation of a single quadrupole while avoiding the need for a rotating vacuum seal.

A more common form of stigmator consists of a *magnetic* quadrupole: four short solenoid coils with their axes pointing toward the optic axis. The coils that generate the magnetic field are connected in series and carry a common current  $I_1$ . They are wired so that north and south magnetic poles face each other, as in Fig. 2-16b. Because the magnetic force on an electron is perpendicular to the magnetic field, the coils that lie along the x-axis deflect electrons in the y-direction and *vice versa*. In other respects, the magnetic stigmator acts similar to the electrostatic one. Astigmatism correction could be achieved by adjusting the current  $I_1$  and the azimuthal orientation of the quadrupole, but in practice a second set of four coils is inserted at  $45^\circ$  to the first and carries a current  $I_2$  that can be varied independently. Independent adjustment of  $I_1$  and  $I_2$  enables the astigmatism to be corrected without any mechanical rotation.

The stigmators found in electron-beam columns are *weak* quadrupoles, designed to correct for *small* deviations of in focusing power of a much stronger lens. Strong quadrupoles are used in synchrotrons and nuclear-particle accelerators to focus high-energy electrons or other charged particles. Their focusing power is positive in one plane and negative (diverging, equivalent to a concave lens) in the perpendicular plane. However, a series combination of *two* quadrupole lenses can result in an overall convergence in both planes, without image rotation and with less power dissipation than required by an axially-symmetric lens. This last consideration is important in the case of particles heavier than the electron.

In light optics, the surfaces of a glass lens can be machined with sufficient accuracy that *axial* astigmatism is negligible. But for rays coming from an *off-axis* object point, the lens appears elliptical rather than round, so *off-axis* astigmatism is unavoidable. In electron optics, this kind of astigmatism is not significant because the electrons are confined to small angles relative to the optic axis (to avoid excessive spherical and chromatic aberration). Another off-axis aberration, called *coma*, is of some importance in a TEM if the instrument is to achieve its highest possible resolution.

### Distortion and curvature of field

In an undistorted image, the distance  $R$  of an image point from the optic axis is given by  $R = M r$ , where  $r$  is the distance of the corresponding object point from the axis, and the image magnification  $M$  is a constant. Distortion changes this ideal relation to:

$$R = M r + C_d r^3 \quad (2.22)$$

where  $C_d$  is a constant. If  $C_d > 0$ , each image point is displaced outwards, particularly those further from the optic axis, and the entire image suffers from pincushion distortion (Fig. 2-2c). If  $C_d < 0$ , each image point is displaced inward relative to the ideal image and barrel distortion is present (Fig. 2-2b).

As might be expected from the third-power dependence in Eq. (2.22), distortion is related to spherical aberration. In fact, an axially-symmetric electron lens (for which  $C_s > 0$ ) will give  $C_d > 0$  and pincushion distortion. Barrel distortion is produced in a two-lens system in which the second lens magnifies a *virtual* image produced by the first lens. In a multi-lens system, it is therefore possible to combine the two types of distortion to achieve a distortion-free image.

In the case of magnetic lenses, a third type of distortion arises from the fact that the image rotation  $\phi$  may depend on the distance  $r$  of the object

point from the optic axis. This spiral distortion was illustrated in Fig. 2-2c. Again, compensation is possible in a multi-lens system.

For most purposes, distortion is a less serious lens defect than aberration, because it does not result in a loss of image detail. In fact, it may not be noticeable unless the microscope specimen contains straight-line features. In some TEMs, distortion is observed when the final (projector) lens is operated at reduced current (therefore large  $C_s$ ) to achieve a low overall magnification.

*Curvature of field* is not a serious problem in the TEM or SEM, because the angular deviation of electrons from the optic axis is small. This results in a large *depth of focus* (the image remains acceptably sharp as the plane of viewing is moved along the optic axis) as we will discuss in Chapter 3.





## Chapter 3

# THE TRANSMISSION ELECTRON MICROSCOPE

As we saw in Chapter 1, the TEM is capable of displaying magnified images of a thin specimen, typically with a magnification in the range  $10^3$  to  $10^6$ . In addition, the instrument can be used to produce electron-diffraction patterns, useful for analyzing the properties of a crystalline specimen. This overall flexibility is achieved with an electron-optical system containing an **electron gun** (which produces the beam of electrons) and several magnetic lenses, stacked vertically to form a lens column. It is convenient to divide the instrument into three sections, which we first define and then study in some detail separately.

The **illumination system** comprises the electron gun, together with two or more condenser lenses that focus the electrons onto the specimen. Its design and operation determine the diameter of the electron beam (often called the “illumination”) at the specimen and the intensity level in the final TEM image.

The **specimen stage** allows specimens to either be held stationary or else intentionally moved, and also inserted or withdrawn from the TEM. The mechanical stability of the specimen stage is an important factor that determines the spatial resolution of the TEM image.

The **imaging system** contains at least three lenses that together produce a magnified image (or a diffraction pattern) of the specimen on a fluorescent screen, on photographic film, or on the monitor screen of an electronic camera system. How this imaging system is operated determines the magnification of the TEM image, while the design of the imaging lenses largely determines the spatial resolution that can be obtained from the microscope.

### 3.1 The Electron Gun

The electron gun produces a beam of electrons whose kinetic energy is high enough to enable them to pass through thin areas of the TEM specimen. The gun consists of an electron source, also known as the **cathode** because it is at a high negative potential, and an electron-accelerating chamber. There are several types of electron source, operating on different physical principles, which we now discuss.

#### Thermionic emission

Figure 3-1 shows a common form of electron gun. The electron source is a V-shaped (“hairpin”) filament made of tungsten (W) wire, spot-welded to straight-wire leads that are mounted in a ceramic or glass socket, allowing the filament assembly to be exchanged easily when the filament eventually “burns out.” A direct (dc) current heats the filament to about 2700 K, at which temperature tungsten emits electrons into the surrounding vacuum by the process known as **thermionic emission**.

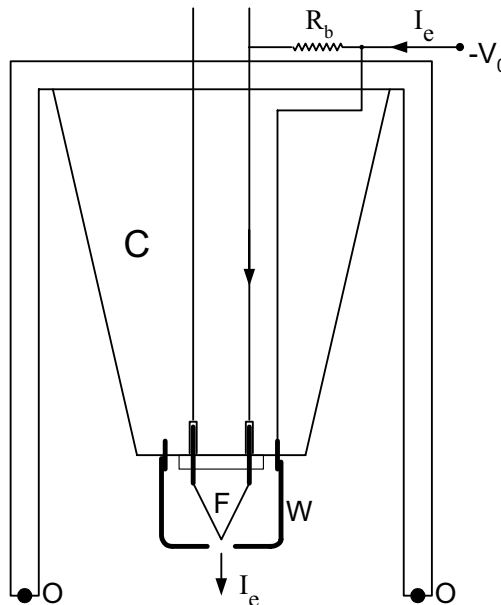


Figure 3-1. Thermionic electron gun containing a tungsten filament F, Wehnelt electrode W, ceramic high-voltage insulator C, and o-ring seal O to the lower part of the TEM column. An autobias resistor  $R_b$  (actually located inside the high-voltage generator, as in Fig. 3-6) is used to generate a potential difference between W and F, thereby controlling the electron-emission current  $I_e$ . Arrows denote the direction of *electron* flow that gives rise to the emission current.

The process of thermionic emission can be illustrated using an electron-energy diagram (Fig. 3-2) in which the vertical axis represents the energy  $E$  of an electron and the horizontal axis represents distance  $z$  from the tungsten surface. Within the tungsten, the electrons of highest energy are those at the top of the **conduction band**, located at the **Fermi energy**  $E_F$ . These conduction electrons carry the electrical current within a metal; they normally cannot escape from the surface because  $E_F$  is an amount  $\phi$  (the **work function**) below the **vacuum level**, which represents the energy of a stationary electron located a short distance outside the surface. As shown in Fig. 3-2, the electron energy does not change *abruptly* at the metal/vacuum interface; when an electron leaves the metal, it generates lines of electric field that terminate on positive charge (reduced electron density) at the metal surface (see Appendix). This charge provides an electrostatic force toward the surface that weakens only *gradually* with distance. Therefore, the electric field involved and the associated potential (and potential energy of the electron) also fall off gradually outside the surface.

Raising the temperature of the cathode causes the nuclei of its atoms to vibrate with an increased amplitude. Because the conduction electrons are in thermodynamic equilibrium with the atoms, they share this thermal energy, and a small proportion of them achieve energies *above* the vacuum level, enabling them to escape across the metal/vacuum interface.

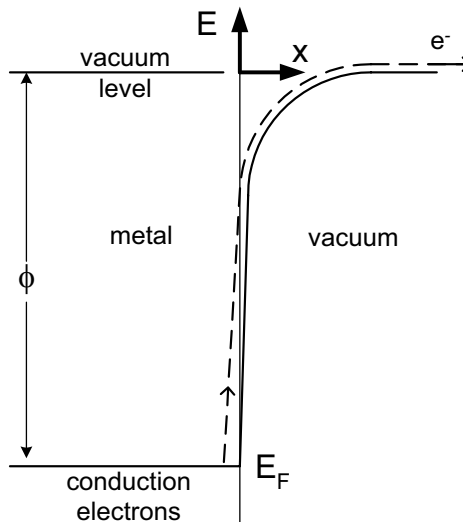


Figure 3-2. Electron energy-band diagram of a metal, for the case where no electric field is applied to its surface. The process of thermionic emission of an electron is indicated by the dashed line.

The rate of electron emission can be represented as a current density  $J_e$  (in  $\text{A/m}^2$ ) at the cathode surface, which is given by the **Richardson law**:

$$J_e = A T^2 \exp(-\phi/kT) \quad (3.1)$$

In Eq. (3.1),  $T$  is the absolute temperature (in K) of the cathode and  $A$  is the **Richardson constant** ( $\approx 10^6 \text{ Am}^{-2}\text{K}^{-2}$ ), which depends to some degree on the cathode material but not on its temperature;  $k$  is the Boltzmann constant ( $1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$ ), and  $kT$  is *approximately* the mean thermal energy of an atom (or of a conduction electron, if measured relative to the Fermi level). The work function  $\phi$  is conveniently expressed in **electron volts** (eV) of energy and must be converted to Joules by multiplying by  $e = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}$  for use in Eq. (3.1). Despite the  $T^2$  factor, the *main* temperature dependence in this equation comes from the exponential function. As  $T$  is increased,  $J_e$  remains very low until  $kT$  approaches a few percent of the work function. The temperature is highest at the *tip* of the V-shaped filament (farthest from the leads, which act as heat sinks), so most of the emission occurs in the immediate vicinity of the tip.

Tungsten has a high cohesive energy and therefore a high melting point ( $\approx 3650 \text{ K}$ ) and also a low vapor pressure, allowing it to be maintained at a temperature of  $2500 - 3000 \text{ K}$  in vacuum. Despite its rather high work function ( $\phi = 4.5 \text{ eV}$ ),  $\phi/kT$  can be sufficiently *low* to provide adequate electron emission. Being an electrically conducting metal, tungsten can be made into a thin wire that can be heated by passing a current through it. In addition, tungsten is chemically stable at high temperatures: it does not combine with the residual gases that are present in the relatively poor vacuum (pressure  $> 10^{-3} \text{ Pa}$ ) sometimes found in a thermionic electron gun. Chemical reaction would lead to contamination (“poisoning”) of the emission surface, causing a change in work function and emission current.

An alternative strategy is to employ a material with a *low* work function, which does not need to be heated to such a high temperature. The preferred material is lanthanum hexaboride ( $\text{LaB}_6$ ;  $\phi = 2.7 \text{ eV}$ ), fabricated in the form of a short rod (about  $2 \text{ mm}$  long and less than  $1 \text{ mm}$  in diameter) sharpened to a tip, from which the electrons are emitted. The  $\text{LaB}_6$  crystal is heated (to  $1400 - 2000 \text{ K}$ ) by mounting it between wires or onto a carbon strip through which a current is passed. These conducting leads are mounted on pins set into an insulating base whose geometry is identical with that used for a tungsten-filament source, so that the two types of electron source are mechanically interchangeable. Unfortunately, lanthanum hexaboride becomes poisoned if it combines with traces of oxygen, so a better vacuum (pressure  $< 10^{-4} \text{ Pa}$ ) is required in the electron gun. Oxide cathode materials

(used in cathode-ray tubes) are even more sensitive to ambient gas and are not used in the TEM.

Compared to a tungsten filament, the LaB<sub>6</sub> source is relatively expensive ( $\approx$  \$1000) but lasts longer, provided it is brought to and from its operating temperature *slowly* to avoid thermal shock and the resulting mechanical fracture. It provides comparable emission current from a smaller cathode area, enabling the electron beam to be focused onto a smaller area of the specimen. The resulting higher current density provides a brighter image at the viewing screen (or camera) of the TEM, which is particularly important at high image magnification.

Another important component of the electron gun (Fig. 3-1) is the **Wehnelt** cylinder, a metal electrode that can be easily removed (to allow changing the filament or LaB<sub>6</sub> source) but which normally surrounds the filament completely except for a small ( $< 1$  mm diameter) hole through which the electron beam emerges. The function of the Wehnelt electrode is to control the emission current of the electron gun. For this purpose, its potential is made *more negative* than that of the cathode. This negative potential prevents electrons from leaving the cathode *unless* they are emitted from a region near to its tip, which is located immediately above the hole in the Wehnelt where the electrostatic potential is less negative. Increasing the magnitude of the negative bias reduces both the emitting area and the emission current  $I_e$ .

Although the Wehnelt bias could be provided by a voltage power supply, it is usually achieved through the autobias (or self-bias) arrangement shown in Figs. 3-1 and 3-6. A bias resistor  $R_b$  is inserted between one end of the filament and the negative high-voltage supply ( $-V_0$ ) that is used to accelerate the electrons. Because the electron current  $I_e$  emitted from the filament F must pass through the bias resistor, a potential difference ( $I_e R_b$ ) is developed across it, making the filament less negative than the Wehnelt. Changing the value of  $R_b$  provides a convenient way of intentionally varying the Wehnelt bias and therefore the emission current  $I_e$ . A further advantage of this autobias arrangement is that if the emission current  $I_e$  starts to increase spontaneously (for example, due to upward drift in the filament temperature  $T$ ) the Wehnelt bias becomes more negative, canceling out most of the increase in electron emission. This is another example of the *negative feedback* concept discussed previously (Section 1.7).

The dependence of electron-beam current on the filament heating current is shown in Fig. 3-3. As the current is increased from zero, the filament temperature eventually becomes high enough to give some emission current. At this point, the Wehnelt bias ( $-I_e R_b$ ) is *not* sufficient to control the emitting

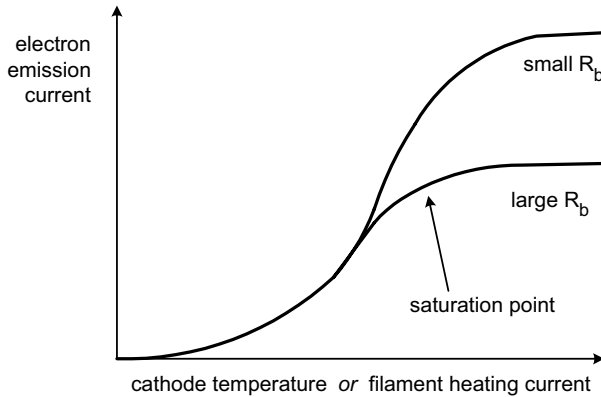


Figure 3-3. Emission current  $I_e$  as a function of cathode temperature, for thermionic emission from an autobiasing (tungsten or LaB<sub>6</sub>) cathode.

area according to the feedback mechanism just described, so  $I_e$  increases *rapidly* with filament temperature  $T$ , as expected from Eq. (3.1). As the filament temperature is further increased, the negative feedback mechanism starts to operate: the beam current becomes approximately *independent* of filament temperature and is said to be **saturated**. The filament heating current (which is adjustable by the TEM operator, by turning a knob) should never be set higher than the value required for current saturation. Higher values give very little increase in beam current and would result in a *decrease* in source lifetime, due to evaporation of W or LaB<sub>6</sub> from the cathode. The change in  $I_e$  shown in Fig. 3-1 can be monitored from an emission-current meter or by observing the brightness of the TEM screen, allowing the filament current to be set appropriately. If the beam current needs to be changed, this is done using a *bias-control* knob that selects a different value of  $R_b$ , as indicated in Fig. 3-3.

### Schottky emission

The thermionic emission of electrons can be increased by applying an electrostatic field to the cathode surface. This field lowers the height of the potential barrier (which keeps electrons inside the cathode) by an amount  $\Delta\phi$  (see Fig. 3-4), the so-called **Schottky effect**. As a result, the emission-current density  $J_e$  is increased by a factor  $\exp(\Delta\phi/kT)$ , typically a factor of 10 as demonstrated in the Appendix.

A Schottky source consists of a pointed crystal of tungsten welded to the end of V-shaped tungsten filament. The tip is coated with zirconium oxide (ZrO) to provide a low work function ( $\approx 2.8$  eV) and needs to be heated to

only about 1800 K to provide adequate electron emission. The tip protrudes about 0.3 mm *outside* the hole in the Wehnelt, so an *accelerating* field exists at its surface, created by an extractor electrode biased *positive* with respect to the tip. Because the tip is very sharp, electrons are emitted from a very small area, resulting in a relatively high current density ( $J_e \approx 10^7 \text{ A/m}^2$ ) at the surface. Because the ZrO is easily poisoned by ambient gases, the Schottky source requires a vacuum substantially better than that of a LaB<sub>6</sub> source.

**Field emission**

If the electrostatic field at a tip of a cathode is increased sufficiently, the *width* (horizontal in Fig. 3-4) of the potential barrier becomes small enough to allow electrons to escape *through* the surface potential barrier by quantum-mechanical tunneling, a process known as **field emission**. We can estimate the required electric field as follows. The probability of electron tunneling becomes *high* when the barrier width  $w$  is comparable to de Broglie wavelength  $\lambda$  of the electron. This wavelength is related to the electron momentum  $p$  by  $p = h/\lambda$  where  $h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34} \text{ Js}$  is the Planck constant. Because the barrier width is smallest for electrons at the top of the conduction band (see Fig. 3-4), they are the ones most likely to escape. These electrons (at the Fermi level of the cathode material) have a speed  $v$  of the order  $10^6 \text{ m/s}$  and a wavelength  $\lambda = h/p = h/mv \approx 0.5 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m}$ .

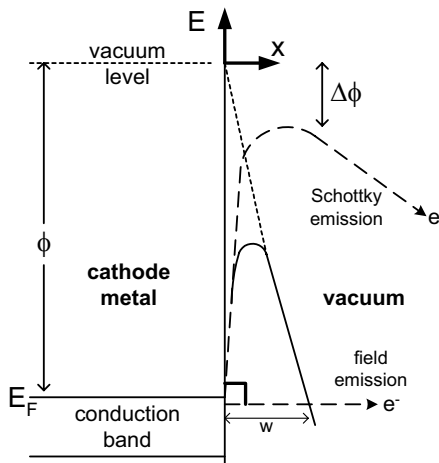


Figure 3-4. Electron-energy diagram of a cathode, with both moderate ( $\approx 10^8 \text{ V/m}$ ) and high ( $\approx 10^9 \text{ V/m}$ ) electric fields applied to its surface; the corresponding Schottky and field emission of electrons are shown by dashed lines. The upward vertical axis represents the potential energy  $E$  of an electron (in eV) relative to the vacuum level, therefore the downward direction represents electrostatic potential (in V).



As seen from the right-angled triangle in Fig. 3-4, the electric field  $E$  that gives a barrier width (at the Fermi level) of  $w$  is  $E = (\phi/e)/w$ . Taking  $w = \lambda$  (which allows high tunneling probability) and  $\phi = 4.5$  eV for a tungsten tip, so that  $(\phi/e) = 4.5$  V, gives  $E = 4.5 / (0.5 \times 10^{-9}) \approx 10^{10}$  V/m. In fact, such a huge value is not necessary for field emission. Due to their high speed  $v$ , electrons arrive at the cathode surface at a very high rate, and adequate electron emission can be obtained with a tunneling probability of the order of  $10^{-2}$ , which requires a surface field of the order  $10^9$  V/m.

This still-high electric field is achieved by replacing the Wehnelt cylinder (used in thermionic emission) by an extractor electrode maintained at a *positive* potential  $+V_1$  relative to the tip. If we approximate the tip as a sphere whose radius  $r \ll$  distance to the extractor electrode, we can use the electrostatic formula for an isolated sphere:  $E = KQ/r^2$  to relate the surface electric field  $E$  to the charge  $Q$  on the tip,  $K = 1/(4\pi\epsilon_0)$  being the Coulomb constant. This electric field is also the *potential gradient* just outside the tip:  $E = -dV/dr$ , so *by integration* we obtain the potential of the tip (relative to its distant surroundings) as  $V_1 = KQ/r = E r$ . Making the radius of curvature  $r$  of the tip very small enables the required local field  $E = V_1/r$  to be produced with practical values of  $V_1$  (a few thousand volts).

The tip is made sufficiently sharp by electrolytically dissolving the end of a short piece of tungsten wire. Electrons are emitted from an extremely small area ( $\approx r^2$ ), resulting in an effective source diameter below 10 nm and allowing the electrons to be focused by a *single* demagnifying lens into an “electron probe” of sub-nanometer dimensions.

Because thermal excitation is not required, a field-emission tip can operate at room temperature, and the process is sometimes called *cold* field emission. As there is no evaporation of tungsten during normal operation, the tip can last for many months or even years before replacement. It is heated (“flashed”) from time to time to remove adsorbed gases, which affect the work function and cause the emission current to be unstable. Even so, cold field emission requires *ultra-high* vacuum (UHV: pressure  $\approx 10^{-8}$  Pa) to achieve stable operation, requiring an elaborate vacuum system and resulting in substantially greater cost of the instrument.

### Comparison of electron sources; source brightness

The operating conditions and the main performance criteria for the four types of electron source are compared in Table 3-1. The numbers in this table are approximate but can be taken as typical for normal operation of a TEM or SEM.

Table 3-1. Operating parameters of four types of electron source\*

Type of source	Tungsten thermionic	LaB <sub>6</sub> thermionic	Schottky emission	Cold field emission
Material	W	LaB <sub>6</sub>	ZrO/W	W
φ (eV)	4.5	2.7	2.8	4.5
T (K)	2700	1800	1800	300
E (V/m)	low	low	≈ 10 <sup>8</sup>	> 10 <sup>9</sup>
J <sub>e</sub> (A/m <sup>2</sup> )	≈ 10 <sup>4</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>6</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>7</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>9</sup>
β (Am <sup>-2</sup> /sr <sup>-1</sup> )	≈ 10 <sup>9</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>10</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>11</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>12</sup>
d <sub>s</sub> (μm)	≈ 40	≈ 10	≈ 0.02	≈ 0.01
Vacuum (Pa)	< 10 <sup>-2</sup>	< 10 <sup>-4</sup>	< 10 <sup>-7</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>-8</sup>
Lifetime (hours)	≈ 100	≈ 1000	≈ 10 <sup>4</sup>	≈ 10 <sup>4</sup>
ΔE (eV)	1.5	1.0	0.5	0.3

\* φ is the work function, T the temperature, E the electric field, J<sub>e</sub> the current density, and β the electron-optical brightness at the cathode; d<sub>s</sub> is the effective (or virtual) source diameter, and ΔE is the energy spread of the emitted electrons.

Although the available emission current I<sub>e</sub> decreases as we proceed from a tungsten-filament to a field-emission source, the effective source diameter and the emitting area (A<sub>s</sub> = πd<sub>s</sub><sup>2</sup>/4) decrease by a greater factor, resulting in an *increase* in the current density J<sub>e</sub>. More importantly, there is an increase in a quantity known as the electron-optical **brightness** β of the source, defined as the current density divided by the *solid* angle Ω over which electrons are emitted:

$$\beta = I_e / (A_s \Omega) = J_e / \Omega \tag{3.2}$$

Note that in three-dimensional geometry, solid angle replaces the concept of angle in two-dimensional (Euclidean) geometry. Whereas an angle in radians is defined by θ = s/r, where s is arc length and r is arc radius (see Fig. 3-3a), *solid* angle is measured in **steradians** and defined as Ω = A/r<sup>2</sup> where A is the *area* of a section of a sphere at distance r (see Fig. 3-3b). Dividing by r<sup>2</sup> makes Ω a dimensionless number, just like θ.

If electrons were emitted in *every* possible direction from a point source, the solid angle of emission would be Ω = A/r<sup>2</sup> = (4πr<sup>2</sup>)/r<sup>2</sup> = 4π steradian. In practice, Ω is small and is related in a simple way to the half-angle α of the emission cone. Assuming small α, the area of the curved end of the cone in Fig. 3-3c approximates to that of a flat disk of radius s, giving:

$$\Omega \approx (\pi s^2) / r^2 = \pi \alpha^2 \tag{3.3}$$

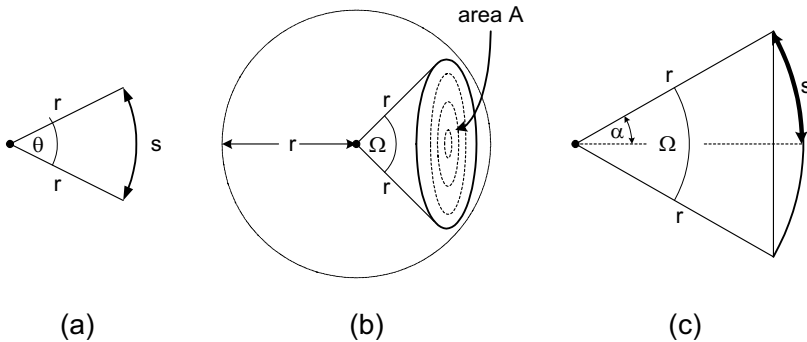


Figure 3-5. (a) Two-dimensional diagram defining angle  $\theta$  in radians. (b) Three-dimensional diagram defining solid angle  $\Omega$  in steradians. (c) Cross-section through (b) showing the relationship between solid angle  $\Omega$  and the corresponding half-angle  $\alpha$  of the cone.

Because image broadening due to spherical aberration of an electron lens increases as  $\alpha^3$ , the ability of a demagnifying lens to create a high current density within a small-diameter probe is helped by keeping  $\alpha$  small and therefore by using an electron source of high brightness. In the *scanning* electron microscope, for example, we can achieve better spatial resolution by using a Schottky or field-emission source, whose brightness is considerably above that of a thermionic source (see Table 3-1).

Equation (3.3) can also be used to define an electron-optical brightness  $\beta$  at *any* plane in an electron-optical system where the beam diameter is  $d$  and the convergence semi-angle is  $\alpha$ . This concept is particularly useful because  $\beta$  retains the same value at each image plane, known as the principle of **brightness conservation**. In other words,

$$\beta = J_e/\Omega = I [\pi(d/2)^2]^{-1} (\pi\alpha^2)^{-1} = \text{source brightness} = \text{constant} \quad (3.4)$$

Note that Eq. (3.4) is equivalent to saying that the product  $\alpha d$  is the same at each plane. Brightness conservation remains valid when the system contains a diaphragm that absorbs some of the electrons. Although the beam current  $I$  is reduced at the aperture, the solid angle of the beam is reduced in the same proportion.

The last row of Table 3-1 contains typical values of the energy spread  $\Delta E$  for the different types of electron gun: the variation in kinetic energy of the emitted electrons. In the case of thermionic and Schottky sources, this energy spread is a reflection of the statistical variations in thermal energy of electrons within the cathode, which depends on the cathode temperature  $T$ . In the case of a field-emission source, it is due to the fact that some electrons are emitted from energy levels (within the tip) that are below the Fermi level. In both cases,  $\Delta E$  increases with emission current  $I_e$  (known as the

Boersch effect) because of the electrostatic interaction between electrons at “crossovers” where the beam has small diameter and the electron separation is relatively small. Larger  $\Delta E$  leads to increased chromatic aberration (Section 2.6) and a loss of image resolution in both the TEM and SEM.

### 3.2 Electron Acceleration

After emission from the cathode, electrons are accelerated to their final kinetic energy  $E_0$  by means of an electric field parallel to the optic axis. This field is generated by applying a potential difference  $V_0$  between the cathode and an **anode**, a round metal plate containing a central hole (vertically below the cathode) through which the beam of *accelerated* electrons emerges. Many of the accelerated electrons are absorbed in the anode plate and only around 1% pass through the hole, so the beam current in a TEM is typically 1% of the emission current from the cathode.

To produce electron acceleration, it is only necessary that the anode be positive *relative to* the cathode. This situation is most conveniently arranged by having the anode (and the rest of the microscope column) at *ground* potential and the electron source at a high negative potential ( $-V_0$ ). Therefore the cathode and its control electrode are mounted below a high-voltage insulator (see Fig. 3-1) made of a ceramic (metal-oxide) material, with a smooth surface (to deter electrical breakdown) and long enough to withstand the applied high voltage, which is usually at least 100 kV.

Because the thermal energy  $kT$  is small ( $\ll 1$  eV), we can take the kinetic energy (KE) of an electron to be *zero* before acceleration and its potential energy (PE) to be the product of its electrostatic charge ( $-e$ ) and the local potential ( $-V_0$ ). After acceleration, the KE of the electron is  $E_0$  and its PE is zero. Applying the principle of conservation of total energy (KE + PE):

$$0 + (-e)(-V_0) = E_0 + (-e)(0) \quad (3.5)$$

The final kinetic energy of the electron (in J) is therefore  $E_0 = (e)V_0$ . Expressed in electron volts, it is  $(e)V_0/e = V_0$ . In other words, the electron energy, in eV units, is *equal* to the magnitude of the accelerating voltage. Note that a similar statement *would* hold for protons (charge =  $+e$ ) but *not* for alpha particles (charge =  $+2e$ ) or any ion whose charge differs from  $\pm e$ .

According to classical physics (Newtonian mechanics), we could deduce the speed  $v$  of an accelerated electron by equating  $E_0$  to  $mv^2/2$ . However, this simple expression becomes inaccurate for an object whose speed is a significant fraction of the speed of light in vacuum ( $c$ ). In this case, we must make use of Einstein's Special Theory of Relativity, according to which the

Table 3-2. Speed  $v$  and fractional increase in mass ( $\gamma$ ) of an electron (rest mass  $m_0$ ) for four values of the accelerating potential  $V_0$ . The final column illustrates that the classical expression for kinetic energy no longer applies at these high particle energies.

$V_0$ (kV) or $E_0$ (keV)	$\gamma$	$v/c$	$m_0v^2/2$ (keV)
100	1.20	0.55	77
200	1.39	0.70	124
300	1.59	0.78	154
1000	2.96	0.94	226

energy of a material object can be redefined so that it includes a rest-energy component  $m_0c^2$ , where  $m_0$  is the familiar *rest mass* used in classical physics. If defined in this way, the total energy  $E$  is set equal to  $mc^2$ , where  $m = \gamma m_0$  is called the *relativistic mass* and  $\gamma = 1/(1-v^2/c^2)^{1/2}$  is a relativistic factor that represents the apparent increase in mass with speed. In other words,

$$E = mc^2 = (\gamma m_0) c^2 = E_0 + m_0c^2 \quad (3.6)$$

and the *general* formula for the kinetic energy  $E_0$  is therefore:

$$E_0 = (\gamma - 1) m_0c^2 \quad (3.7)$$

Applying Eq. (3.7) to an accelerated electron, we find that its speed  $v$  reaches a significant fraction of  $c$  for the acceleration potentials  $V_0$  used in a TEM, as shown in the third column of Table 3.2. Comparison of the first and last columns of this table indicates that, especially for the higher accelerating voltages, use of the classical expression  $m_0v^2/2$  would result in a substantial underestimate of the kinetic energy of the electrons.

The accelerating voltage ( $-V_0$ ) is supplied by an electronic high-voltage (HV) generator, which is connected to the electron gun by a thick, well-insulated cable. The high potential is derived from the secondary winding of a step-up transformer, whose primary is connected to an electronic oscillator circuit whose (ac) output is proportional to an applied (dc) input voltage; see Fig. 3-6. Because the oscillator operates at low voltage, the large potential difference  $V_0$  appears between the primary and secondary windings of the transformer. Consequently, the secondary winding must be separated from the transformer core by an insulating material of sufficient thickness; it cannot be tightly wrapped around an electrically conducting soft-iron core, as in many low-voltage transformers. Because of this less-efficient magnetic coupling, the transformer operates at a frequency well above mains frequency (60 Hz or 50 Hz). Accordingly, the oscillator output is a high-frequency ( $\approx 10$  kHz) sine wave, whose amplitude is proportional to the input voltage  $V_i$  (Fig. 3-6).

To provide direct (rather than alternating) high voltage, the current from the transformer secondary is **rectified** by means of a series of solid-state diodes, which allow electrical current to pass only in one direction, and **smoothed** to remove its alternating component (ripple). Smoothing is achieved largely by the HV cable, which has enough capacitance between its inner conductor and the grounded outer sheath to short-circuit the ac-ripple component to ground at the operating frequency of the transformer output.

Because the output of the oscillator circuit is linearly related to its input and rectification is also a linear process, the magnitude of the resulting accelerating voltage is given by:

$$V_0 = G V_i \tag{3.8}$$

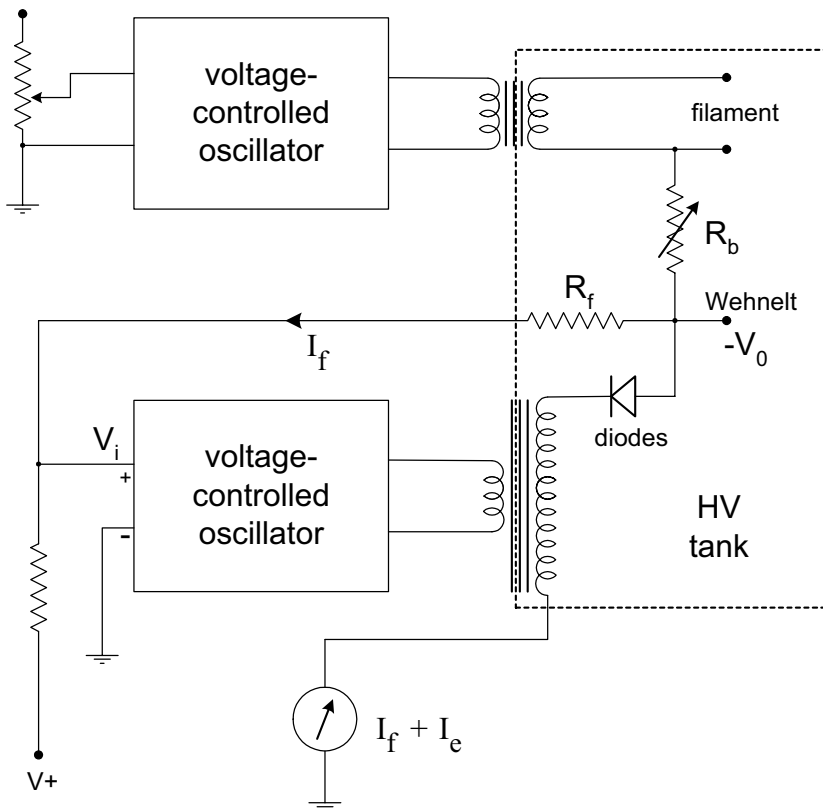


Figure 3-6. Schematic diagram of a TEM high-voltage generator. The meter connected to the bottom end of the secondary of the high-voltage transformer reads the sum of the emission and feedback currents. The arrow indicates the direction of electron flow (opposite to that of the conventional current). Components within the dashed rectangle operate at high voltage.

where  $G$  is a large amplification factor (or gain), dependent on the design of the oscillator and of the step-up transformer. Changing  $V_i$  (by altering the reference voltage  $V_+$  in Fig. 3-6) allows  $V_0$  to be intentionally changed (for example, from 100 kV to 200 kV). However,  $V_0$  could drift from its original value as a result of a slow change in  $G$  caused by drift in the oscillator or diode circuitry, or a change in the emission current  $I_e$  for example. Such HV instability would lead to chromatic changes in focusing and is generally unwanted. To stabilize the high voltage, a **feedback resistor**  $R_f$  is connected between the HV output and the oscillator input, as in Fig. 3-6. If  $G$  were to increase slightly,  $V_0$  would change *in proportion* but the increase in feedback current  $I_f$  would drive the input of the oscillator more negative, opposing the change in  $G$ . In this way, the high voltage is *stabilized* by negative feedback, in a similar way to stabilization of the emission current by the bias resistor.

To provide adequate insulation of the high-voltage components in the HV generator, they are immersed in transformer oil (used in HV power transformers) or in a gas such as sulfur hexafluoride ( $\text{SF}_6$ ) at a few atmospheres pressure. The high-voltage “tank” also contains the bias resistor  $R_b$  and a transformer that supplies the heating current for a thermionic or Schottky source. Because the source is operating at high voltage, this second transformer must also have good insulation between its primary and secondary windings. Its primary is driven by a second voltage-controlled oscillator, whose input is controlled by a potentiometer that the TEM operator turns to adjust the filament temperature; see Fig. 3-6.

Although the electric field accelerating the electrons is primarily along the optic axis, the electric-field lines *curve* in the vicinity of the hole in the Wehnelt control electrode; see Fig. 3-7. This curvature arises because the electron source (just above the hole) is less negative than the electrode, by an amount equal to the Wehnelt bias. The curvature results in an *electrostatic* lens action that is equivalent to a weak *convex* lens, bringing the electrons to a focus (crossover) just below the Wehnelt. Similarly, electric field lines curve above the hole in the anode plate, giving the equivalent of a *concave* lens and a diverging effect on the electron beam. As a result, electrons entering the lens column *appear* to come from a **virtual source**, whose diameter is typically 40  $\mu\text{m}$  and divergence semi-angle  $\alpha_1$  (relative to the optic axis) about 1 mrad (0.06 degree) in the case of a thermionic source.

### 3.3 Condenser-Lens System

The TEM may be required to produce a highly magnified (*e.g.*  $M = 10^5$ ) image of a specimen on a fluorescent screen, of diameter typically 15 cm. To ensure that the screen image is not too dim, most of the electrons that pass

through the specimen should fall within this diameter, which is equivalent to a diameter of  $(15 \text{ cm})/M = 1.5 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$  at the specimen. For viewing larger areas of specimen, however, the final-image magnification might need to be as low as 2000, requiring an illumination diameter of  $75 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$  at the specimen. In order to achieve the required flexibility, the condenser-lens system must contain at least two electron lenses.

The first condenser (C1) lens is a *strong* magnetic lens, with a focal length  $f$  that may be as small as 2 mm. Using the *virtual* electron source (diameter  $d_s$ ) as its object, C1 produces a *real* image of diameter  $d_1$ . Because the lens is located 20 cm or more below the object, the object distance  $u \approx 20 \text{ cm} \gg f$  and so the image distance  $v \approx f$  according to Eq. (2.2). The magnification factor of C1 is therefore  $M = v/u \approx f/u \approx (2 \text{ mm})/(200 \text{ mm}) = 1/100$ , corresponding to *demagnification* by a factor of a hundred. For a W-filament electron source,  $d_s \approx 40 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$ , giving  $d_1 \approx M d_s = (0.01)(40 \text{ }\mu\text{m}) = 0.4 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$ . In practice, the C1 lens current can be adjusted to give *several* different values of  $d_1$ , using a control that is often labeled “spot size”.

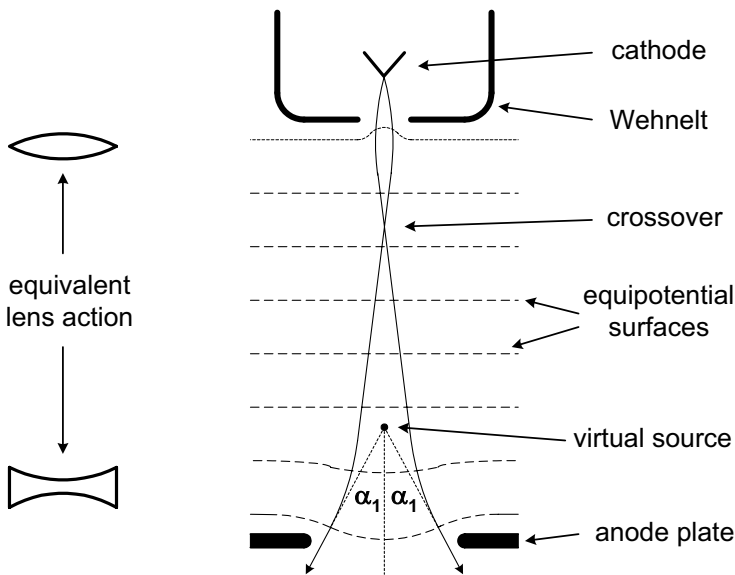


Figure 3-7. Lens action within the accelerating field of an electron gun, between the electron source and the anode. Curvature of the equipotential surfaces around the hole in the Wehnelt electrode constitutes a converging electrostatic lens (equivalent to a convex lens in light optics), whereas the nonuniform field just above the aperture in the anode creates a diverging lens (the equivalent of a concave lens in light optics).



The second condenser (C2) lens is a *weak* magnetic lens ( $f \approx$  several centimeters) that provides little or no magnification ( $M \approx 1$ ) but allows the diameter of illumination ( $d$ ) at the specimen to be varied continuously over a wide range. The C2 lens also contains the **condenser aperture** (the hole in the condenser diaphragm) whose diameter  $D$  can be changed in order to control the **convergence semi-angle**  $\alpha$  of the illumination, the *maximum* angle by which the incident electrons deviate from the optic axis.

The case of **fully-focused illumination** is shown in Fig. 3-8a. An image of the electron source is formed *at* the specimen plane (image distance  $v_0$ ), and the illumination diameter at that plane is therefore  $d_0 = M d_1 (\approx d_1$  if object distance  $u \approx v_0$ ). This condition provides the *smallest* illumination diameter (below 1  $\mu\text{m}$ ), as required for high-magnification imaging. Because the condenser aperture is located close to the principal plane of the lens, the illumination convergence angle is given by  $2\alpha_0 \approx D/v_0 \approx 10^{-3}$  rad = 1 mrad for  $D = 100 \mu\text{m}$  and  $v_0 = 10$  cm.

Figure 3-8b shows the case of **underfocused illumination**, in which the C2 lens current has been *decreased* so that an image of the electron source is formed *below* the specimen, at a larger distance  $v$  from the lens. Because the specimen plane no longer contains an image of the electron source, the diameter of illumination at that plane is no longer determined by the source diameter but by the value of  $v$ . Taking  $v = 2v_0$ , for example, simple geometry gives the convergence semi-angle *at the image* as  $\theta \approx D/v \approx \alpha_0/2$  and the illumination diameter as  $d \approx (2\theta)(v - v_0) \approx \alpha_0 v_0 = 50 \mu\text{m}$ . As shown by the dashed lines in Fig. 3-8b, electrons arriving at the center of the specimen at the previous angle  $\alpha_0$  relative to the optic axis (as in Fig. 3-8a) would have to originate from a region *outside* the demagnified source, and because there are no such electrons, the new convergence angle  $\alpha$  of the illumination must be smaller than  $\alpha_0$ . Using the brightness-conservation theorem, Eq. (3.4), the product  $(\alpha d)$  must be the same at the new image plane and at the specimen, giving  $\alpha = \alpha_0 (d_0/d) \approx (0.5\text{mrad})(1\mu\text{m}/50\mu\text{m}) \approx 0.010$  mrad. Defocusing the illumination therefore ensures that the incident electrons form an almost *parallel* beam. This condition is useful for recording electron-diffraction patterns in the TEM or for maximizing the contrast in images of crystalline specimens and is obtained by defocusing the C2 lens or using a small C2 aperture, or both.

The situation for **overfocused illumination**, where the C2 current has been increased so that the image occurs *above* the specimen plane, is shown in Fig. 3-8c. In comparison with the fully-focused condition, the illumination diameter  $d$  is again increased and the convergence semi-angle  $\alpha$  *at the specimen plane* is reduced in the same proportion, in accordance with the brightness theorem. Note that this low convergence angle occurs despite an

increase in the *beam* angle  $\theta$  at the electron-source image plane. In this context, it should be noted that the convergence angle of the illumination is always defined in terms of the variation in angle of the electrons that arrive at a single point in the specimen.

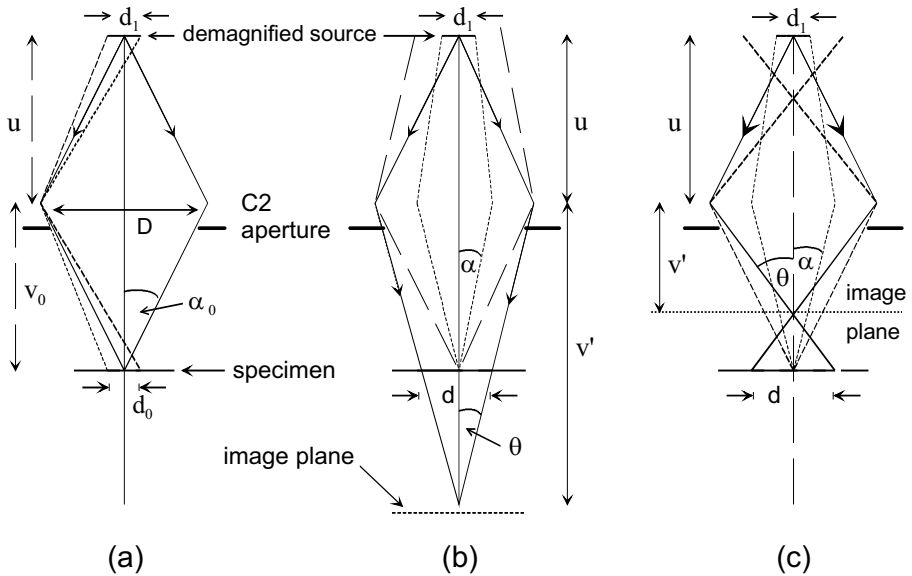


Figure 3-8. Operation of the second condenser (C2) lens; solid rays represent electrons emitted from the *center* of the C1-demagnified source. (a) Fully-focused illumination whose diameter  $d_0$  is comparable to the diameter  $d_1$  of the demagnified source (see dashed rays) and whose convergence angle ( $2\alpha_0$ ) depends on the diameter of the C2 aperture. (b) Underfocused illumination whose diameter  $d$  depends on the image distance  $v$  and whose convergence angle  $\alpha$  depends on  $v$  and on  $d_1$ . (c) Overfocused illumination, also providing large  $d$  and small  $\alpha$ .

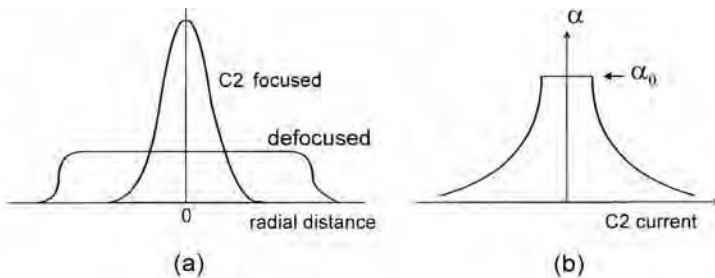


Figure 3-9. (a) Current density at the specimen as a function of distance from the optic axis, for illumination fully focused and for defocused (underfocused or overfocused) illumination. (b) Convergence semi-angle of the specimen illumination, as a function of C2-lens excitation.

Figure 3-9 summarizes these conclusions in terms of the current-density profile at the specimen plane, which is directly observable (with the radial distance magnified) as a variation in image intensity on the TEM screen.

### Condenser aperture

The condenser aperture is the small hole in a metal diaphragm located just below the polepieces of the C2 lens. In order to center the aperture on the optic axis, the diaphragm is mounted at the end of a support rod that can be moved precisely in the horizontal plane ( $x$  and  $y$  directions) by turning knobs located outside the microscope column, or by an electric-motor drive. The aperture is correctly aligned (on the optic axis) when variation of the C2 current changes the illumination diameter but does *not* cause the magnified disk of illumination to move across the viewing screen. In practice, there are three or four apertures of different diameter ( $D \approx 20 - 200 \mu\text{m}$ ), arranged along the length of the support rod, so that moving the rod in or out by several mm places a different aperture on the optic axis. Choosing a larger size increases the convergence angle  $\alpha$  of the illumination but allows more electrons to reach the specimen, giving higher intensity in the TEM image.

### Condenser stigmator

The condenser-lens system also contains a stigmator to correct for residual astigmatism of the C1 and C2 lenses. When such astigmatism is present and the *amplitude* control of the stigmator is *set to zero*, the illumination (viewed on the TEM screen, with or without a TEM specimen) expands into an ellipse (rather than a circle) when the C2 lens excitation is increased or decreased from the focused-illumination setting; see Fig. 3-10. To correctly adjust the stigmator, its amplitude control is first set to *maximum* and the orientation control adjusted so that the major axis of the ellipse lies perpendicular to the zero-amplitude direction. The *orientation* is then correct but the lens astigmatism has been *overcompensated*. To complete the process, the amplitude setting is reduced until the illumination ellipse becomes a circle, now of smaller diameter than would be possible without astigmatism correction (Fig. 3-10e). In other words, the illumination can be focused more tightly after adjusting the stigmator. To check that the setting is optimum, the C2 current can be varied around the fully-focused condition; the illumination should contract or expand but always remain circular.

Condenser-lens astigmatism does not directly affect the resolution of a TEM-specimen image. However, it does reduce the maximum intensity (assuming focused illumination) of such an image on the TEM screen and

therefore the ability of the operator to focus on fine details. Therefore, the condenser stigmator is routinely adjusted as part of TEM-column alignment.

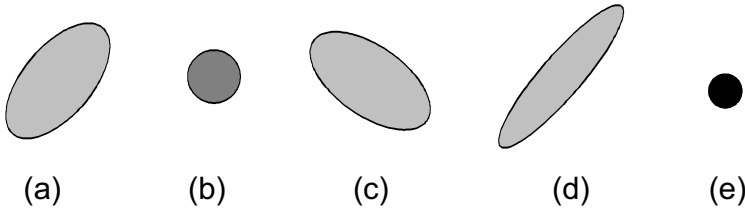


Figure 3-10. TEM-screen illumination when axial astigmatism is present and the C2 lens is (a) underfocused, (b) fully focused, and (c) overfocused. Also shown: effect of the condenser stigmator with (d) its correct orientation (for overfocus condition) but maximum amplitude, and (e) correct orientation and amplitude; note that the focused illumination now has smaller diameter than with no astigmatism correction.

### Illumination shift and tilt controls

The illumination system contains two pairs of coils that apply uniform magnetic fields in the horizontal ( $x$  and  $y$ ) directions, in order to shift the electron beam (incident on the specimen) in the  $y$  and  $x$  directions, respectively. The current in these coils is varied by two illumination-shift controls, which are normally used to *center* the illumination on the TEM screen, correcting for any horizontal drift of the electron gun or slight misalignment of the condenser lenses.

A second pair of coils is used to adjust the *angle* of the incident beam relative to the optic axis. They are located *at* the plane of the C1 image so that their effect on the electron rays does not *shift* the illumination. The currents in these coils are adjusted using ( $x$  and  $y$ ) illumination-tilt controls, which are often adjusted to *align* the illumination parallel to the optic axis (to minimize aberrations of the TEM imaging lenses) but can also be used to set up the illumination to give *dark-field* images, as discussed in Chapter 4.

## 3.4 The Specimen Stage

To allow observation in different brands or models of microscope, TEM specimens are always made circular with a diameter of 3 mm. Perpendicular to this disk, the specimen must be thin enough (at least in some regions) to allow electrons to be transmitted to form the magnified image. The specimen stage is designed to hold the specimen as stationary as possible, as any drift or vibration would be magnified in the final image, impairing its spatial

resolution (especially if the image is recorded by a camera over a period of several seconds). But in order to view all possible regions of the specimen, it is also necessary to move the specimen horizontally over a distance of up to 3 mm if necessary.

The design of the stage must also allow the specimen to be inserted into the vacuum of the TEM column without introducing air. This is achieved by inserting the specimen through an **airlock**, a small chamber into which the specimen is placed initially and which can be evacuated before the specimen enters the TEM column. Not surprisingly, the specimen stage and airlock are the most mechanically complex and precision-machined parts of the TEM. There are two basic designs of the specimen stage: side-entry and top-entry.

In a **side-entry stage**, the specimen is clamped (for example, by a threaded ring) close to the end of a rod-shaped specimen holder and is inserted horizontally through the airlock. The airlock-evacuation valve and a high-vacuum valve (at the entrance to the TEM column) are activated by rotation of the specimen holder about its long axis; see Fig. 3-11a.

One advantage of this side-entry design is that it is easy to arrange for precision motion of the specimen. Translation in the horizontal plane ( $x$  and  $y$  directions) and in the vertical ( $z$ ) direction is often achieved by applying the appropriate movement to an end-stop that makes contact with the pointed end of the specimen holder. Specimen tilt (rotation to a desired orientation) about the long axis of the rod is easily achieved by turning the outside end of the specimen holder. Rotation about a perpendicular (horizontal or vertical) axis can be arranged by mounting the specimen on a pivoted ring whose orientation is changed by horizontal movement of a rod that runs along the inside of the specimen holder. Precise tilting of the specimen is sometimes required in order to examine the shape of certain features or to characterize the nature of microscopic defects in a crystalline material.

A further advantage of the side-entry stage is that heating of a specimen is easy to arrange, by installing a small heater at the end of the specimen holder, with electrical leads running along the inside of the holder to a power supply located outside the TEM. The ability to change the temperature of a specimen allows structural changes in a material (such as phase transitions) to be studied at the microscopic level.

Specimen cooling can also be achieved, by incorporating (inside the side-entry holder) a heat-conducting metal rod whose outer end is immersed in liquid nitrogen (at 77 K). If the temperature of a biological-tissue specimen is lowered sufficiently below room temperature, the vapor pressure of ice becomes low enough that the specimen can be maintained in a hydrated state during its examination in the TEM.

One disadvantage of the side-entry design is that mechanical vibration, picked up from the TEM column or from acoustical vibrations in the external air, is transmitted directly to the specimen. In addition, any thermal expansion of the specimen holder can cause drift of the specimen and of the TEM image. These problems have been largely overcome by careful design, including choice of materials used to construct the specimen holder. As a result, side-entry holders are widely used, even for high-resolution imaging.

In a **top-entry stage**, the specimen is clamped to the bottom end of a cylindrical holder that is equipped with a conical collar; see Fig. 3-11b. The holder is loaded into position through an airlock by means of a sliding and tilting arm, which is then detached and retracted. Inside the TEM, the cone of the specimen holder fits snugly into a conical well of the specimen stage, which can be translated in the ( $x$  and  $y$ ) horizontal directions by a precision gear mechanism.

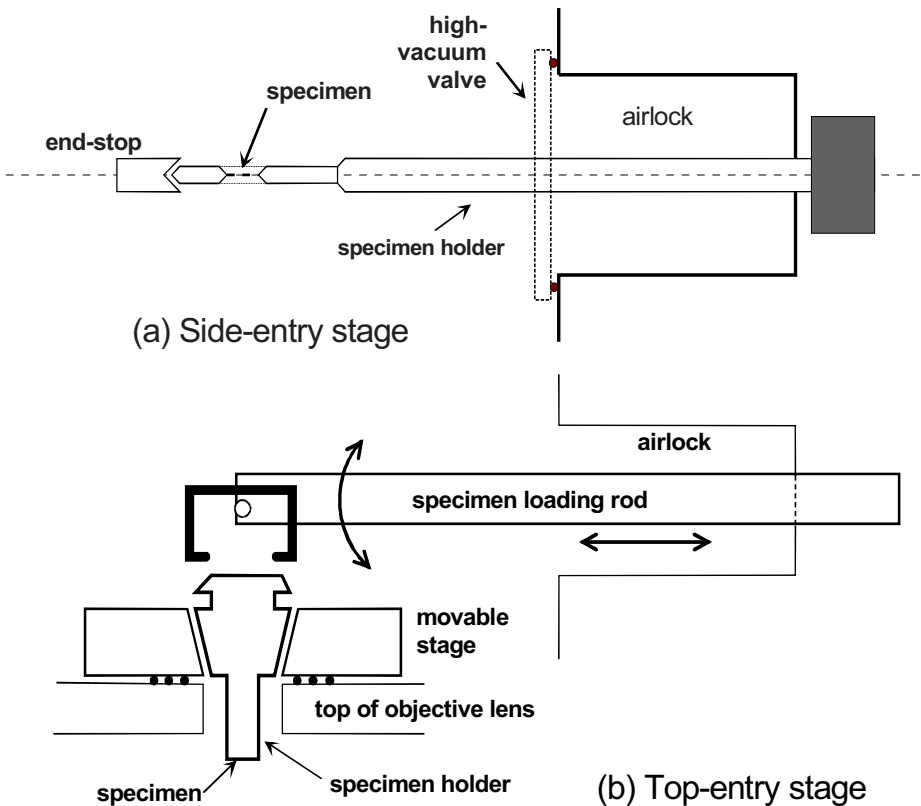


Figure 3-11. Schematic diagrams of (a) a side-entry and (b) a top-entry specimen holder.

The major advantage of a top-entry design is that the loading arm is disengaged after the specimen is loaded, so the specimen holder is less liable to pick up vibrations from the TEM environment. In addition, its axially symmetric design tends to ensure that any thermal expansion occurs radially about the optic axis and therefore becomes small close to the axis. However, it is more difficult to provide tilting, heating, or cooling of the specimen. Although such facilities have all been implemented in top-entry stages, they require elaborate precision engineering, making the holder fragile and expensive. Because the specimen is held at the bottom of its holder, it is difficult to collect more than a small fraction of the x-rays that are generated by the transmitted beam and emitted in the upward direction, making this design less attractive for high-sensitivity elemental analysis (see Chapter 6).

### 3.5 TEM Imaging System

The imaging lenses of a TEM produce a magnified image or an electron-diffraction pattern of the specimen on a viewing screen or camera system. The spatial resolution of the image is largely dependent on the quality and design of these lenses, especially on the first imaging lens: the objective.

#### Objective lens

As in the case of a light-optical microscope, the lens closest to the specimen is called the objective. It is a strong lens, with a small focal length; because of its high excitation current, the objective must be cooled with temperature-controlled water, thereby minimizing image drift that could result from thermal expansion of the specimen stage. Because focusing power depends on lens excitation, the current for the objective lens must be highly stabilized, using negative feedback within its dc power supply. The power supply must be able to deliver substantially different lens currents, in order to retain the same focal length for different electron-accelerating voltages. The TEM also has fine controls that enable the operator to make small fractional adjustments to the objective current, to allow the specimen image to be accurately focused on the viewing screen.

The objective produces a magnified real image of the specimen ( $M \approx 50$  to 100) at a distance  $v \approx 10$  cm below the center of the lens. Because of the small value of  $f$ , Eq. (2.2) indicates that the object distance  $u$  is only slightly greater than the focal length, so the specimen is usually located within the **pre-field** of the lens (that part of the focusing field that acts on the electron before it reaches the center of the lens). By analogy with a light microscope, the objective is therefore referred to as an **immersion lens**.

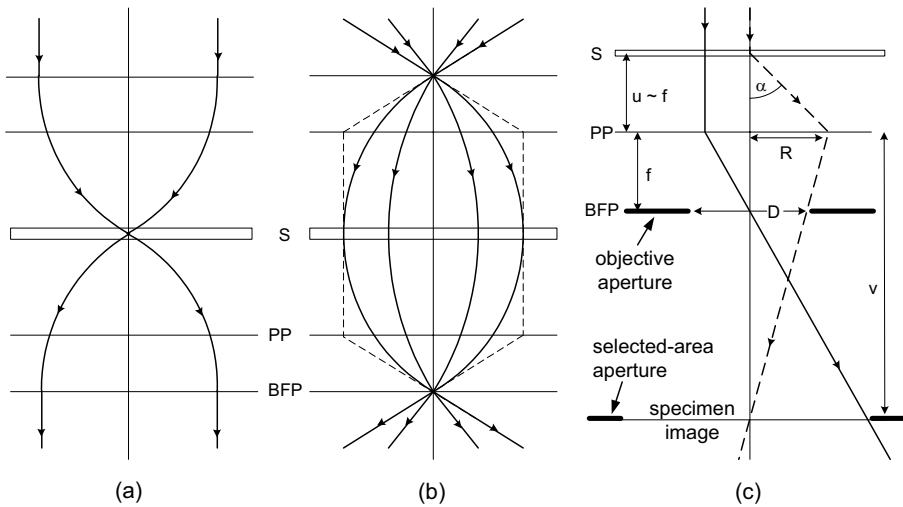


Figure 3-12. Formation of (a) a small-diameter nanoprobe and (b) parallel illumination at the specimen, by means of the pre-field of the objective lens. (c) Thin-lens ray diagram for the objective post-field, showing the specimen (S), principal plane (PP) of the objective post-field and back-focal plane (BFP).

In fact, in a modern *materials-science* TEM (optimized for high-resolution imaging, analytical microscopy, and diffraction analysis of non-biological samples), the specimen is located close to the *center* of the objective lens, where the magnetic field is strong. The objective pre-field then exerts a *strong* focusing effect on the incident illumination, and the lens is often called a **condenser-objective**. When the final (C2) condenser lens produces a near-parallel beam, the pre-field focuses the electrons into a **nanoprobe** of typical diameter 1 – 10 nm; see Fig. 3-12a. Such minuscule electron probes are used in analytical electron microscopy to obtain chemical information from very small regions of the specimen. Alternatively, if the condenser system focuses electrons to a crossover at the front-focal plane of the pre-field, the illumination at the specimen is approximately parallel, as required for most TEM imaging (Fig. 3-12b). The **post-field** of the objective then acts as the first imaging lens with a focal length  $f$  of around 2 mm. This small focal length provides small coefficients of spherical and chromatic aberration and optimizes the image resolution, as discussed in Chapter 2.

In a *biological* TEM, atomic-scale resolution is not required and the objective focal length can be somewhat larger. Larger  $f$  gives higher image



contrast (for a given objective-aperture diameter), which is usually of prime concern because the contrast in tissue-sample images can be very low.

### Objective aperture

An objective diaphragm can be inserted located at the **back-focal plane** (BFP) of the post-field of the objective lens, the plane at which a diffraction pattern of the specimen is first produced. In this plane, *distance* from the optic axis represents the *direction* of travel (angle relative to the optic axis) of an electron that has just left the specimen.

Although in practice the objective behaves as a *thick* lens, we will discuss its properties using a thin-lens ray diagram in which the focusing deflection is considered to occur at a single plane: the **principal plane** of the lens. Accordingly, an electron that *leaves* the specimen parallel to the optic axis is deflected at the principal plane and crosses the axis at the BFP, a distance  $f$  below the principal plane, as illustrated by the solid ray in Fig. 3-12c. Assuming parallel illumination and correctly-adjusted tilt controls, such an electron will have *arrived* at the specimen parallel to the axis and must have remained *undeflected* (unscattered) during its passage through the specimen.

The dashed ray in Fig. 3.12c represents an electron that arrives *along* the optic axis and is scattered (diffracted) through an angle  $\alpha$  by interaction with one or more atoms in the specimen. It therefore leaves the specimen *on* the optic axis but at angle  $\alpha$  relative to it, arriving at the principal plane at a radial distance from the axis equal to  $R = u \tan \alpha \approx f \tan \alpha$ . After deflection by the objective, this electron crosses the optic axis at the first image plane, a relatively large distance ( $v \approx 10$  cm) from the lens. Below the principal plane, the dashed ray is therefore *almost parallel* to the optic axis, and its displacement from the axis at the back-focal plane is *approximately*  $R$ . By inserting an aperture of diameter  $D$  (centered around the optic axis) at the BFP, we can therefore ensure that the electrons that pass through the rest of the imaging system are those with scattering angles between zero and  $\alpha$ , where

$$\alpha \approx \tan \alpha \approx R/f = D/(2f) \quad (3.9)$$

Electrons scattered through larger angles are *absorbed* by the diaphragm surrounding the aperture and do not contribute to the final image. By making  $\alpha$  small, we can ensure that almost *all* scattered electrons are absorbed by the diaphragm. As a result, regions of specimen that scatter electrons strongly will appear as dark areas (due to fewer electrons) in the corresponding final image, which is said to display **scattering contrast** or diffraction contrast.

Besides producing contrast in the TEM image, the objective aperture limits the amount of image blurring that arises from spherical and chromatic aberration. By restricting the range of scattering angles to values less than  $\alpha$ , given by Eq. (3.9), the loss of spatial resolution is limited to an amount  $r_s \approx C_s \alpha^3$  due to spherical aberration and  $r_c \approx C_c \alpha (\Delta E/E_0)$  due to chromatic aberration. Here,  $C_s$  and  $C_c$  are aberration coefficients of the objective lens (Chapter 2);  $\Delta E$  represents the spread in kinetic energy of the electrons emerging from the specimen, and  $E_0$  is their kinetic energy before entering the specimen. Because both  $r_s$  and  $r_c$  decrease with aperture size, it might be thought that the best resolution corresponds to the smallest possible aperture diameter.

But in practice, objective diaphragm gives rise to a diffraction effect that becomes more severe as its diameter decreases, as discussed in Section 1.1, leading to a further loss of resolution  $\Delta x$  given by the Rayleigh criterion:

$$\Delta x \approx 0.6 \lambda / \sin \alpha \approx 0.6 \lambda / \alpha \tag{3.10}$$

where we have assumed that  $\alpha$  is small and is measured in radians.

Ignoring *chromatic* aberration for the moment, we can combine the effect of spherical aberration and electron diffraction at the objective diaphragm by adding the two blurring effects together, so that the image resolution  $\Delta r$  (measured in the object plane) is

$$\Delta r \approx r_s + \Delta x \approx C_s \alpha^3 + 0.6 \lambda / \alpha \tag{3.11}$$

Because the two terms in Eq. (3.11) have opposite  $\alpha$ -dependence, their sum is represented by a curve that displays a minimum value; see Fig. 3-13. To a first approximation, we can find the optimum aperture semi-angle  $\alpha^*$  (corresponding to smallest  $\Delta r$ ) by supposing that both terms make equal contributions at  $\alpha = \alpha^*$ . Equating both terms gives  $(\alpha^*)^4 = 0.6 \lambda / C_s$  and results in  $\alpha^* = 0.88 (\lambda / C_s)^{1/4}$ .

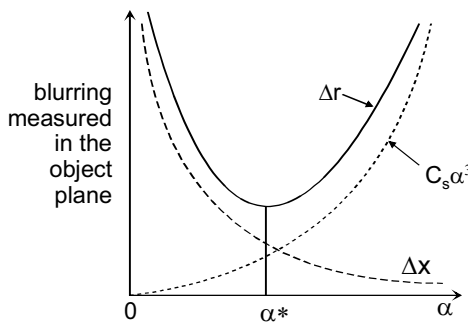


Figure 3-13. Loss of resolution due to spherical aberration (in the objective lens) and diffraction (at the objective aperture). The solid curve shows the combined effect.

A more correct procedure for finding the minimum is to differentiate  $\Delta r$  with respect to  $\alpha$  and set the total derivative to zero, corresponding to zero slope at the minimum of the curve, which gives:  $\alpha^* = 0.67 (\lambda/C_s)^{1/4}$ .

An even better procedure is to treat the blurring terms  $r_s$  and  $\Delta x$  like statistical errors and combine their effect in quadrature:

$$(\Delta r)^2 \approx (r_s)^2 + (\Delta x)^2 \approx (C_s \alpha^3)^2 + (0.6 \lambda/\alpha)^2 \quad (3.12)$$

Taking the derivative and setting it to zero then results in:

$$\alpha^* = 0.63 (\lambda/C_s)^{1/4} \quad (3.13)$$

As an example, let us take  $E_0 = 200$  keV, so that  $\lambda = 2.5$  pm, and  $C_s \approx f/4 = 0.5$  mm, as in Fig. 2-13. Then Eq. (3.13) gives  $\alpha^* = 5.3$  mrad, corresponding to an objective aperture of diameter  $D \approx 2\alpha^*f \approx 20$   $\mu\text{m}$ . Using Eq. (3.12), the optimum resolution is  $\Delta r^* \approx 0.29$  nm.

Inclusion of *chromatic* aberration in Eq. (3.12) would decrease  $\alpha^*$  a little and increase  $\Delta r^*$ . However, our entire procedure is somewhat pessimistic: it assumes that electrons are present in equal numbers at all scattering angles up to the aperture semi-angle  $\alpha$ . Also, a more exact treatment would be based on wave optics rather than geometrical optics. In practice, a modern 200 kV TEM can achieve a point resolution below 0.2 nm, allowing atomic resolution under suitable conditions, which include a low vibration level and low ambient ac magnetic field (Muller and Grazul, 2001). Nevertheless, our calculation has illustrated the importance of lens aberrations. Without these aberrations, large values of  $\alpha$  would be possible and the TEM resolution, limited only by Eq. (3.10), would (for  $\sin \alpha \approx 0.6$ ) be  $\Delta x \approx \lambda \approx 0.025$  nm, well below atomic dimensions.

In *visible-light* microscopy, lens aberrations *can* be made negligible. Glass lenses of large aperture can be used, such that  $\sin \alpha$  approaches 1 and Eq. (3.10) gives the resolution as  $\Delta x \approx 300$  nm as discussed in Chapter 1. But as a result of the much smaller electron wavelength, the TEM resolution is better by more than a factor of 1000, *despite* the electron-lens aberrations.

### Objective stigmator

The above estimates of resolution assume that the imaging system does not suffer from astigmatism. In practice, electrostatic charging of contamination layers (on the specimen or on an objective diaphragm) or hysteresis effects in the lens polepieces give rise to axial astigmatism that may be different for each specimen. The TEM operator can correct for axial astigmatism in the objective (and other imaging lenses) using an *objective* stigmator located just below the objective lens. Obtaining the correct setting requires an adjustment

of amplitude and orientation, as discussed in Section 2.6. One way of setting these controls is to insert an amorphous specimen, whose image contains small point-like features. With astigmatism present, there is a “streaking effect” (preferred direction) visible in the image, which changes in direction through 90 degrees when the objective is adjusted from underfocus to overfocus of the specimen image (similar to Fig. 5.17). The stigmator controls are adjusted to minimize this streaking effect.

### Selected-area aperture

As indicated in Fig. 3-12c and Fig. 3-14, a diaphragm can be inserted in the plane that contains the first magnified (real) image of the specimen, the *image plane* of the objective lens. This selected-area diffraction (SAD) diaphragm is used to limit the region of specimen from which an electron diffraction pattern is recorded. Electrons are transmitted through the aperture only if they fall within its diameter  $D$ , which corresponds to a diameter of  $D/M$  at the specimen plane. In this way, diffraction information can be obtained from specimen regions whose diameter can be as small as  $0.2\ \mu\text{m}$  (taking  $D \approx 20\ \mu\text{m}$  and an objective-lens magnification  $M \approx 100$ ).

As seen from Fig. 3-12c, *sharp* diffraction spots are formed at the objective back-focal plane (for electrons scattered at a particular angle) only if the electron beam incident on the specimen is almost parallel. This condition is usually achieved by defocusing the second condenser lens, giving a low convergence angle but a large irradiation area at the specimen (Fig. 3-9). The purpose of the SAD aperture is therefore to provide diffraction information with good angular resolution, combined with good spatial resolution.

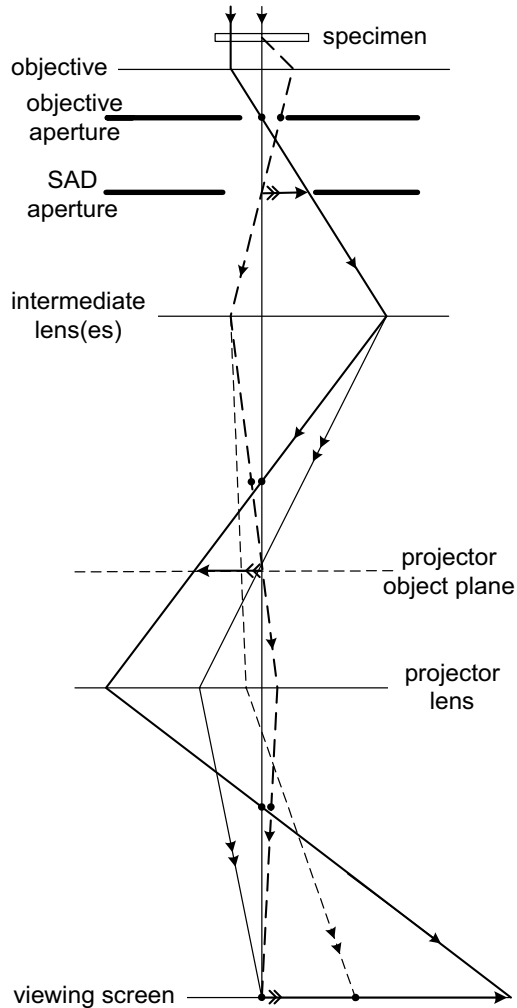
### Intermediate lens

A modern TEM contains several lenses between the objective and the final (projector) lens. At least one of these lenses is referred to as the intermediate, and the combined function of all of them can be described in terms of the action of a *single* intermediate lens, as shown in Fig. 3-14. The intermediate serves two purposes. First of all, by changing its focal length in small steps, its image magnification can be changed, allowing the overall magnification of the TEM to be varied over a large range, typically  $10^3$  to  $10^6$ .

Second, by making a larger change to the intermediate lens excitation, an electron diffraction pattern can be produced on the TEM viewing screen. As depicted in Fig. 3-14, this is achieved by reducing the current in the intermediate so that this lens produces, at the projector *object* plane, a

diffraction pattern (solid ray crossing the optic axis) rather than an image of the specimen (dashed ray crossing the axis).

Because the objective lens *reduces* the angles of electrons relative to the optic axis, intermediate-lens aberrations are not of great concern. Therefore, the intermediate can be operated as a weak lens ( $f \approx$  several centimeters) without degrading the image or diffraction pattern.



*Figure 3-14.* Thin-lens ray diagram of the imaging system of a TEM. As usual, the image rotation has been suppressed so that the electron optics can be represented on a flat plane. Image planes are represented by horizontal arrows and diffraction planes by horizontal dots. Rays that lead to a TEM-screen diffraction pattern are identified by the double arrowheads. (Note that the diagram is not to scale: the final image magnification is only 8 in this example).

## Projector lens

The purpose of the projector lens is to produce an image or a diffraction pattern across the entire TEM screen, with an overall diameter of several centimeters. Because of this requirement, some electrons (such as the solid single-arrow ray in Fig. 3-14) arrive at the screen at a large distance from the optic axis, introducing the possibility of image *distortion* (Chapter 2). To minimize this effect, the projector is designed to be a strong lens, with a focal length of a few millimeters. Ideally, the final-image diameter is fixed (the image should *fill* the TEM screen) and the projector operates at a fixed excitation, with a single object distance and magnification  $v/u \approx 100$ . However, in many TEMs the projector-lens strength can be reduced in order to give images of relatively low magnification ( $< 1000$ ) on the viewing screen. As in the case of light optics, the final-image magnification is the algebraic product of the magnification factors of each of the imaging lenses.

## TEM screen and camera

A phosphor screen is used to convert the electron image to a visible form. It consists of a metal plate coated with a thin layer of powder that fluoresces (emits visible light) under electron bombardment. The traditional phosphor material is zinc sulfide (ZnS) with small amounts of metallic impurity added, although alternative phosphors are available with improved sensitivity (electron/photon conversion efficiency). The phosphor is chosen so that light is emitted in the middle of the spectrum (yellow-green region), to which the human eye is most sensitive. The TEM screen is used mainly for *focusing* a TEM image or diffraction pattern, and for this purpose, light-optical binoculars are often mounted just outside the viewing window, to provide some additional magnification. The viewing window is made of special glass (high lead content) and is of sufficient thickness to absorb the x-rays that are produced when the electrons deposit their energy at the screen.

To permanently record a TEM image or diffraction pattern, photographic film can be used. This film has a layer of a silver halide (AgI and/or AgBr) emulsion, similar to that employed in black-and-white photography; both electrons and photons produce a subtle chemical change that can be amplified by immersion in a *developer* solution. In regions of high image intensity, the developer *reduces* the silver halide to metallic silver, which appears dark. The recorded image is therefore a photographic *negative*, whose contrast is reversed relative to the image seen on the TEM screen. An optical enlarger can be used to make a positive print on photographic paper, which also has a silver-halide coating.

Nowadays, photographic film has been largely replaced by electronic image-recording devices, based on charge-coupled diode (CCD) sensors. They contain an array of a million or more silicon photodiodes, each of which provides an electrical signal proportional to the local intensity level. Because such devices are easily damaged by high-energy electrons, they are preceded by a phosphor screen that converts the electron image to variations in visible-light intensity. Electronic recording has numerous advantages. The recorded image can be inspected immediately on a monitor screen, avoiding the delay (and cost) associated with photographic processing. Because the CCD sensitivity is high, even high-magnification (with low-intensity) images can be viewed without eyestrain, making focusing and astigmatism correction a lot easier. The image information is stored digitally in computer memory and subsequently on magnetic or optical disks, from which previous images can be rapidly retrieved for comparison purposes. The digital nature of the image also allows various forms of image processing, as well as rapid transfer of images between computers by means of the Internet.

### Depth of focus and depth of field

As a matter of convenience, the film or CCD camera is located several centimeters below (or sometimes above) the TEM viewing screen. If a specimen image (or a diffraction pattern) has been brought to exact focus on the TEM screen, it is strictly speaking *out of focus* at any other plane. At a plane that is a height  $h$  below (or above) the true image plane, each point in the image becomes a circle of confusion whose radius is  $s = h \tan \beta$ , as illustrated in Fig. 3-15a. This radius is equivalent to a blurring:

$$\Delta s = s/M = (h/M) \tan \beta \quad (3.14)$$

in the *specimen* plane, where  $M$  is the combined magnification of the entire imaging system and  $\beta$  is the convergence angle at the screen, corresponding to scattering through an angle  $\alpha$  in the specimen, as shown in Fig. 3-15a. However, this blurring will be significant only if  $\Delta s$  is comparable to or greater than the resolution  $\Delta r$  of the in-focus TEM image. In other words, the additional image blurring will not be noticeable if  $\Delta s \ll \Delta r$ .

To compute  $\Delta s$  we first note, from trigonometry of the two large triangles in Fig. 3-15a, that  $x = u \tan \alpha = v \tan \beta$ , giving  $\tan \beta = (u/v) \tan \alpha = (1/M) \tan \alpha$ . If an objective diaphragm is in place to remove electrons above  $\alpha \approx 5$  mrad, then  $\beta \approx \tan \beta \approx \alpha/M = 5 \times 10^{-6}$  rad for  $M = 1000$ , decreasing to  $5 \times 10^{-9}$  rad for  $M = 10^6$ . These are extremely small angles, giving rise to correspondingly small values of  $\Delta s$ : for  $h = 10$  cm, Eq. (3.14) gives  $\Delta s = 0.5$  nm for  $M = 1000$  and  $\Delta s = 5 \times 10^{-16}$  m for  $M = 10^6$ . Therefore, for typical TEM magnifications, the final image recorded at a different plane is equally sharp.

Another way of expressing this result is as follows. Suppose we take  $\Delta s = \Delta r$ , so that the image resolution is only slightly degraded (by a factor  $\approx \sqrt{2}$ ) by being out-of-focus. The value of  $h$  that would give rise to this  $\Delta s$ , for a given  $M$  and  $\alpha$ , is known as the **depth of focus** of the image (sometimes called depth of image). Taking  $\alpha = 5$  mrad and  $\Delta r = 0.2$  nm, our depth of focus is  $h = M \Delta r / \beta \approx M^2 \Delta r / \alpha = 4$  cm for  $M = 1000$ , increasing to  $h = 40$  km for  $M = 10^6$ . In practice, a magnification as low as 1000 would be unsuitable for recording a high-resolution image, because image detail on a scale  $M \Delta r \approx 0.2 \mu\text{m}$  would be below the resolution limit of a phosphor, film, or CCD sensor. Therefore, practical values of the depth of focus are so large that a magnified image of the specimen is equally sharp at all recording planes.

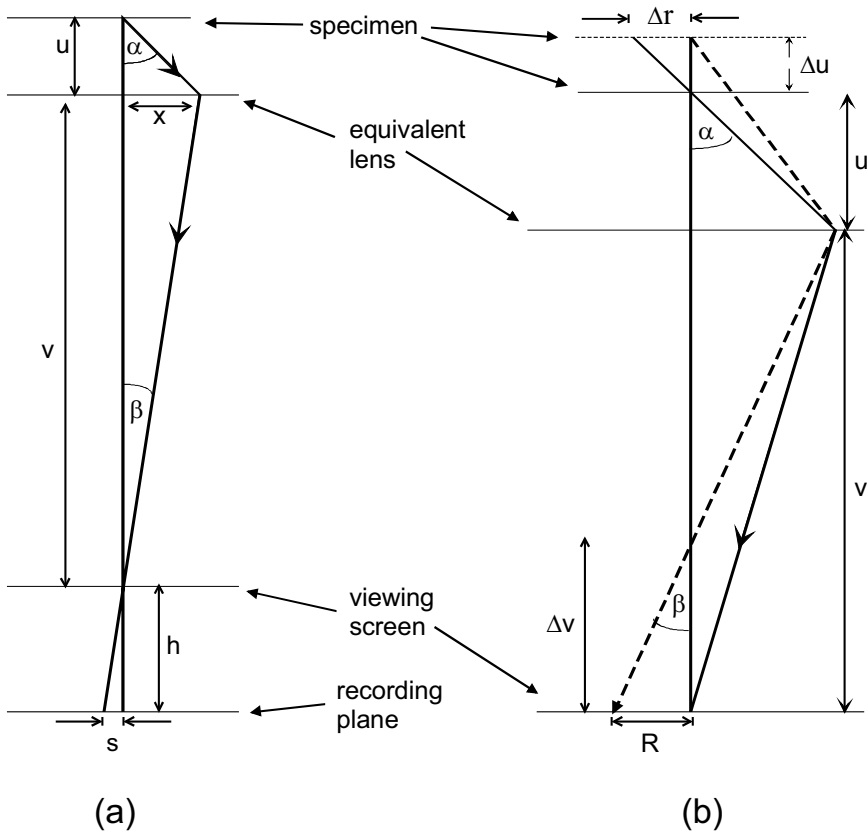


Figure 3-15. (a) Ray diagram illustrating depth of focus; the TEM imaging lenses have been replaced by a single lens of large magnification  $M$ . (b) Ray diagram illustrating depth of field. The radius of blurring (caused by raising the specimen through a distance  $\Delta u$ ) is  $R$  in the image-recording plane, equivalent to  $\Delta r = R/M$  in the specimen plane.



A related concept is **depth of field**: the distance  $\Delta u$  (along the optic axis) that the *specimen* can be moved without its image (focused at a given plane) becoming noticeably blurred. Replacing the TEM imaging system with a single lens of fixed focal length  $f$  and using  $1/u + 1/v = 1/f$ , the change in image distance is  $\Delta v = - (v/u)^2 \Delta u = - M^2 \Delta u$  (the minus sign denotes a decrease in  $v$ , as in Fig. 3-15b). The radius of the disk of confusion in the *image* plane (due to defocus) is  $R = \beta|\Delta v| = (\alpha/M) (-\Delta v) = \alpha M \Delta u$ , equivalent to a radius  $\Delta r = R/M = \alpha \Delta u$  at the *specimen* plane. This same result can be obtained more directly by extrapolating backwards the solid ray in Fig. 3-15b to show that the electrons that arrive at a single on-axis point in the image could have come from anywhere within a circle whose radius (from geometry of the topmost right-angle triangle) is  $\Delta r = \alpha \Delta u$ .

If we take  $\alpha = 5$  mrad and set the loss or resolution  $\Delta r$  equal to the TEM resolution ( $\approx 0.2$  nm), we get  $\Delta u = (0.2 \text{ nm})/(0.005) = 40$  nm as the depth of field. Most TEM specimens are of the order 100 nm or less in thickness. If the objective lens is focused on features at the mid-plane of the specimen, features close to the top and bottom surfaces will still be acceptably in focus. In other words, the small value of  $\alpha$  ensures that a TEM image is normally a *projection* of all structure present in the specimen. It is therefore difficult or impossible to obtain depth information from a single TEM image. On the other hand, this substantial depth of field avoids the need to focus on several different planes within the specimen, as is sometimes necessary in a light-optical microscope where  $\alpha$  may be large and the depth of field can be considerably less than the specimen thickness.

### 3.6 Vacuum System

It is essential to remove most of the air from the inside of a TEM column, so that the accelerated electrons can follow the principles of electron optics, rather than being scattered by gas molecules. In addition, the electron gun requires a sufficiently good vacuum in order to prevent a high-voltage discharge and to avoid oxidation of the electron-emitting surface.

A mechanical **rotary pump** (RP) is used in many vacuum systems. This pump contains a rotating assembly, driven by an electric motor and equipped with internal vanes (A and B in Fig. 3-16) separated by a coil spring so that they press against the inside cylindrical wall of the pump, forming an airtight seal. The interior of the pump is lubricated with a special oil (of low vapor pressure) to reduce friction and wear of the sliding surfaces. The rotation axis is offset from the axis of the cylinder so that, as gas is drawn from the inlet tube (at A in Fig. 3-16a), it expands considerably in volume before being sealed off by the opposite vane (B in Fig. 3-16b).

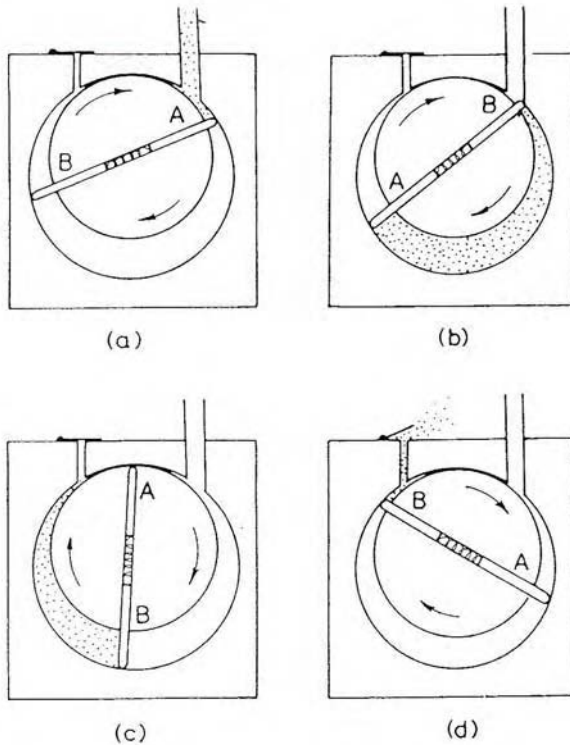


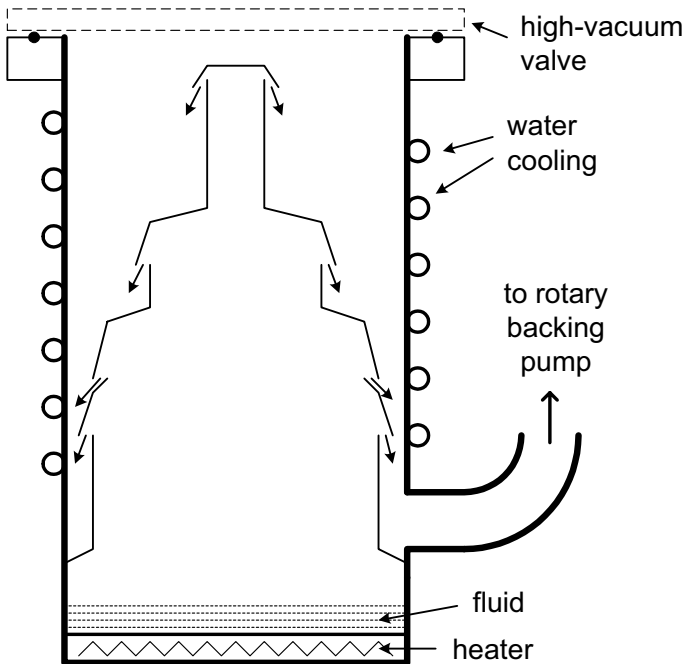
Figure 3-16. Schematic diagram of a rotary vacuum pump, illustrating one complete cycle of the pumping sequence. Spring-loaded vanes A and B rotate clockwise, each drawing in gas molecules and then compressing them toward the outlet.

During the remainder of the rotation cycle, the air is compressed (Fig. 3-16c) and driven out of the outlet tube (Fig. 3-16d). Meanwhile, air in the opposite half of the cylinder has already expanded and is about to be compressed to the outlet, giving a continuous pumping action. The rotary pump generates a “rough” vacuum with a pressure down to 1 Pa, which is a factor  $\approx 10^5$  less than atmospheric pressure but still too high for a tungsten-filament source and totally inadequate for other types of electron source.

To produce a “high” vacuum ( $\approx 10^{-3}$  Pa), a **diffusion pump** (DP) can be added. It consists of a vertical metal cylinder containing a small amount of a special fluid, a carbon- or silicon-based oil having very low vapor pressure and a boiling point of several hundred degrees Celsius. At the base of the pump (Fig. 3-17), an electrical heater causes the fluid to boil and turn into a vapor that rises and is then deflected downwards through jets by an internal baffle assembly. During their descent, the oil molecules collide with air

molecules, imparting a downward momentum and resulting in a downward flow of gas from the inlet of the pump. When the oil molecules arrive at the cooled inside wall of the DP, they condense back into a liquid that falls under gravity to the base of the pump, allowing the oil to be continuously recycled. To prevent oxidation of the oil and multiple collisions between oil and gas molecules, the pressure at the base of the diffusion pump must be below about 10 Pa before the heater is turned on. A rotary pump is therefore connected to the bottom end of the diffusion pump, to act as a “backing pump” (Fig. 3-17). This rotary pump (or a second one) is also used to remove most of the air from the TEM column before the high-vacuum valve (connecting the DP to the column) is opened.

Sometimes a **tubomolecular pump** (TMP), essentially a high-speed turbine fan, is used in place of (or to supplement) a diffusion pump. Usually an **ion pump** (IP in Fig. 3-18) is used to achieve pressures below  $10^{-4}$  Pa, as required to operate a LaB<sub>6</sub>, Schottky, or field-emission electron source. By applying a potential difference of several kilovolts between large electrodes, a low-pressure discharge is set up (aided by the presence of a magnetic field) which removes gas molecules by burying them in one of the electrodes.



*Figure 3-17.* Cross section through a diffusion pump. The arrows show oil vapor leaving jets within the baffle assembly. Water flowing within a coiled metal tube keeps the walls cool.

These different pumps must work together in the correct sequence. If the TEM column has been at atmospheric pressure (perhaps for maintenance), most of the air is removed by a rotary pump, which can then function as a *backing pump* for the DP, TMP, or IP. The pumping sequence is controlled by opening and closing vacuum valves in response to the local pressure, monitored by vacuum gauges located in different parts of the system. In a modern TEM, the vacuum system is automated and under electronic control; in fact, its circuit board can be the most complicated in the entire electronics of the microscope.

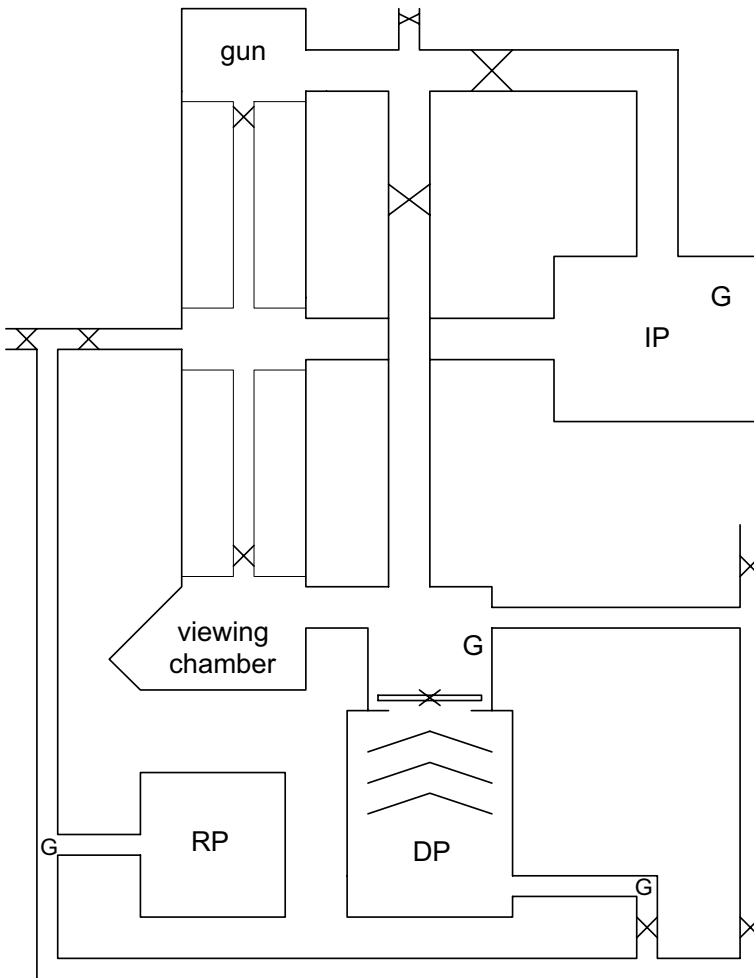


Figure 3-18. Simplified diagram of the vacuum system of a typical TEM. Vacuum valves are indicated by X and vacuum gauges by G. Sometimes a turbomolecular pump is used in place of the diffusion pump, resulting in a cleaner “oil-free” vacuum system.

Frequently, liquid nitrogen is used to help in achieving adequate vacuum inside the TEM, through a process known as **cryopumping**. With a boiling point of 77 K, liquid nitrogen can cool internal surfaces sufficiently to cause water vapor and organic vapors (hydrocarbons) to condense onto the surface. These vapors are therefore removed from the vacuum, so long as the surface remains cold. In a diffusion-pumped vacuum system, liquid nitrogen is often poured into a container (known as a trap) above the DP to minimize “backstreaming” of diffusion-pump vapor into the TEM column.

Organic vapors can also enter the vacuum from components such as the rubber o-ring seals. When a surface is irradiated with electrons, hydrocarbon molecules that arrive at the surface can become chemically bonded together to form a solid *polymer*. This **electron-beam contamination** may occur on both the top and bottom surfaces of a TEM specimen; the resulting contamination layers cause additional scattering of the electrons, reducing the contrast of the TEM image. To combat this process, liquid nitrogen is added to a decontaminator trap attached to the side of the TEM column. By conduction through metal rods or braiding, it cools metal plates located just above or below the specimen, thereby condensing water and organic vapors and giving a low partial pressure of these components in the immediate vicinity of the specimen.

## Chapter 4

### TEM SPECIMENS AND IMAGES

In the transmitted-light microscope, variation of intensity within an image is caused by differences in the *absorption* of photons within different regions of the specimen. In the case of a TEM, however, essentially *all* of the incoming electrons are transmitted through the specimen, provided it is suitably thin. Although not absorbed, these electrons are **scattered** (deflected in their path) by the atoms of the specimen. To understand the formation and interpretation of TEM images, we need to examine the nature of this scattering process.

Many of the concepts involved can be understood by considering just a *single* “target” atom, which we represent in the simplest way as a central nucleus surrounded by orbiting particles, the atomic electrons; see Fig. 4-1. This is the classical planetary model, first established by Ernest Rutherford from analysis of the scattering of alpha particles. In fact, our analysis will largely follow that of Rutherford. Instead of positive alpha particles, we have negative incident electrons, but the cause of the scattering remains the same, namely the **electrostatic** (Coulomb) **interaction** between charged particles.

Interaction between the incoming fast electron and an atomic *nucleus* gives rise to **elastic scattering** where (as we will see) almost no energy is transferred. Interaction between the fast electron and atomic *electrons* results in **inelastic scattering**, in which process the transmitted electron can lose an appreciable amount of energy. We will consider these two types of event in turn, dealing first with the **kinematics** of scattering, where we consider the momentum and energy of the fast electron, without needing to know the nature of the forces involved. As the nature of the force does not matter, the kinematics of electron scattering employs the same principles of classical mechanics as are used to treat the collision of larger (macroscopic) objects.

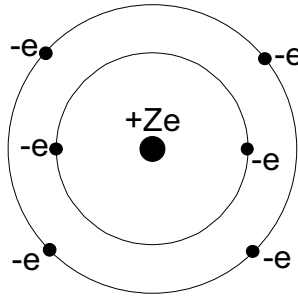


Figure 4-1. Rutherford model of an atom (in this case, carbon with an atomic number  $Z = 6$ ). The electrostatic charge of the central nucleus (whose mass is  $M$ ) is  $+Ze$ ; the balancing negative charge is provided by  $Z$  atomic electrons, each with charge  $-e$ .

## 4.1 Kinematics of Scattering by an Atomic Nucleus

The nucleus of an atom is truly miniscule: about  $3 \times 10^{-15}$  m in diameter, whereas the whole atom has a diameter of around  $3 \times 10^{-10}$  m. The fraction of space occupied by the nucleus is therefore of the order  $(10^{-5})^3 = 10^{-15}$ , and the probability of an electron actually “hitting” the nucleus is almost zero. However, the electrostatic field of the nucleus extends throughout the atom, and incoming electrons are deflected (scattered) by this field.

Applying the principle of conservation of energy to the electron-nucleus system (Fig. 4-2) gives:

$$mv_0^2/2 = mv_1^2/2 + MV^2/2 \quad (4.1)$$

where  $v_0$  and  $v_1$  represent the speed of the electron before and after the “collision,” and  $V$  is the speed of the nucleus (assumed initially at rest) immediately after the interaction. Because  $v_0$  and  $v_1$  apply to an electron that is distant from the nucleus, there is no need to include potential energy in Eq. (4.1). For simplicity, we are using the classical (rather than relativistic) formula for kinetic energy, taking  $m$  and  $M$  as the *rest mass* of the electron and nucleus. As a result, our analysis will not be quantitatively accurate for incident energies  $E_0$  above 50 keV. However, this inaccuracy will not affect our general conclusions.

Applying conservation of momentum to velocity components in the  $z$ - and  $x$ -directions (parallel and perpendicular to the original direction of travel of the fast electron) gives:

$$mv_0 = mv_1 \cos \theta + MV \cos \phi \quad (4.2)$$

$$0 = mv_1 \sin \theta - MV \sin \phi \quad (4.3)$$

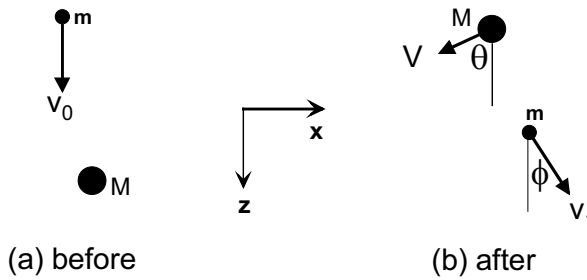


Figure 4-2. Kinematics of electron-nucleus scattering, showing the speed and direction of the motion of the electron (mass  $m$ ) and nucleus (mass  $M$ ) before and after the collision.

In the TEM we detect scattered electrons, not recoiling atomic nuclei, so we need to *eliminate* the nuclear parameters  $V$  and  $\phi$  from Eqs. (4.1) – (4.3). The angle  $\phi$  can be removed by introducing the formula (equivalent to the Pythagoras rule):  $\sin^2 \phi + \cos^2 \phi = 1$ . Taking  $\sin \phi$  from Eq. (4.3) and  $\cos \phi$  from Eq. (4.2) gives:

$$\begin{aligned} M^2V^2 &= M^2V^2 \cos^2 \phi + M^2V^2 \sin^2 \phi \\ &= m^2v_0^2 + m^2v_1^2 - 2m^2 v_0 v_1 \cos \theta \end{aligned} \quad (4.4)$$

where we have used  $\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1$  to further simplify the right-hand side of Eq. (4.4). By using Eq. (4.4) to substitute for  $MV^2/2$  in Eq. (4.1), we can eliminate  $V$  and obtain:

$$mv_0^2/2 - mv_1^2/2 = MV^2/2 = (1/M)[m^2v_0^2 + m^2v_1^2 - 2m^2 v_0 v_1 \cos \theta] \quad (4.5)$$

The left-hand side of Eq. (4.5) represents kinetic energy lost by the electron (and gained by the nucleus) as a result of the Coulomb interaction. Denoting this energy loss as  $E$ , we can evaluate the *fractional* loss of kinetic energy ( $E/E_0$ ) as:

$$E/E_0 = 2E/(mv_0^2) = (m/M) [1 + v_1^2/v_0^2 - 2 (v_1/v_0) \cos \theta] \quad (4.6)$$

The *largest* value of  $E/E_0$  occurs when  $\cos \theta \approx -1$ , giving:

$$E/E_0 \approx (m/M) [1 + v_1^2/v_0^2 + 2 (v_1/v_0)] = (m/M) [1 + v_1/v_0]^2 \quad (4.7)$$

This situation corresponds to an *almost* head-on collision, where the electron makes a 180-degree turn *behind* the nucleus, as illustrated by the dashed trajectory in Fig. 4-3a. (Remember that a direct collision, in which the electron actually collides with the nucleus, is very rare).

Kinematics cannot tell us the value of  $v_1$  but we know from Eq. (4.1) that  $v_1 < v_0$ , so from Eq. (4.7) we can write:

$$E/E_0 < (m/M) [1+1]^2 = 4m/M = 4m / (Au) \quad (4.8)$$

where  $u$  is the atomic mass unit and  $A$  is the *atomic mass number* (number of



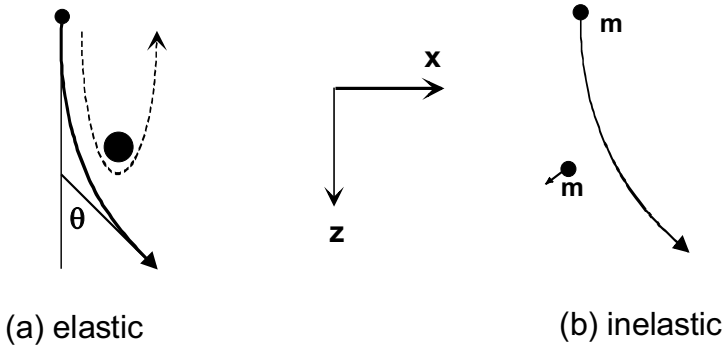


Figure 4-3. Hyperbolic trajectory of an incident electron during (a) elastic scattering (the case of a large-angle collision is indicated by the dashed curve) and (b) inelastic scattering.

protons + neutrons in the nucleus), essentially the *atomic weight* of the atom. For a hydrogen atom ( $A = 1$ ),  $m/M \approx 1/1836$  and Eq. (4.8) gives  $E/E_0 < 0.002$ , so for 180-degree scattering only 0.2% of the kinetic energy of the electron is transmitted to the nucleus. For other elements, and especially for smaller scattering angles, this percentage is even lower. Scattering in the electrostatic field of a nucleus is therefore termed *elastic*, implying that the scattered electron retains almost *all* of its kinetic energy.

## 4.2 Electron-Electron Scattering

If the incident electron passes very close to one of the atomic electrons that surround the nucleus, both particles experience a *repulsive* force. If we ignore the presence of the nucleus and the other atomic electrons, we have a two-body encounter (Fig. 4-3b) similar to the nuclear interaction depicted in Figs. 4-2 and 4-3a. Equations (4.1) to (4.6) should still apply, provided we replace the nuclear mass  $M$  by the mass  $m$  of an atomic electron (identical to the mass of the incident electron, as we are neglecting relativistic effects). In this case, Eq. (4.6) becomes:

$$E/E_0 = 1 + v_1^2/v_0^2 - 2(v_1/v_0) \cos \theta \quad (4.9)$$

Because Eq. (4.9) no longer contains the factor  $(m/M)$ , the energy loss  $E$  can be much larger than for an elastic collision, meaning that scattering from the electrons that surround an atomic nucleus is *inelastic*. In the extreme case of a head-on collision,  $v_1 \approx 0$  and  $E \approx E_0$ ; in other words, the incident electron loses *all* of its original kinetic energy. In practice,  $E$  is in the range 10 eV to 50 eV for the *majority* of inelastic collisions. A more correct treatment of inelastic scattering is based on wave-mechanical theory and includes the *collective* response of all of the electrons contained within *nearby* atoms.

In practice, an electron traveling through a solid must experience both repulsive forces (from other electrons) and attractive forces (from atomic nuclei). But in scattering theory, it turns out to be justified to imagine that either one or the other effect predominates, and to divide the scattering that occurs into elastic and inelastic components.

### 4.3 The Dynamics of Scattering

Because the force acting on a moving electron is electrostatic, its magnitude  $F$  is described by Coulomb's law. So for *elastic* scattering of the electron by the electrostatic field of a single nucleus:

$$F = K(e)(Ze)/r^2 \quad (4.10)$$

where  $K = 1/(4\pi\epsilon_0) = 9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ Nm}^2\text{C}^{-2}$  is the Coulomb constant. Applying Newtonian mechanics ( $F = ma$ ) to this problem, the electron trajectory can be shown to be a hyperbola, as depicted in Fig. 4-3a.

The **angular distribution** of elastic scattering can be expressed in terms of a probability  $P(\theta)$  for an electron to be scattered through a given angle  $\theta$ . But to understand TEM contrast, we are more interested in the probability  $P(>\alpha)$  that an electron is scattered through an angle that *exceeds* the semi-angle  $\alpha$  of the objective aperture. Such an electron will be absorbed within the diaphragm material that surrounds the aperture, resulting in a reduction in intensity within the TEM image.

We can think of the nucleus as presenting (to each incident electron) a *target* of area  $\sigma$ , known as a **scattering cross section**. Atoms being round, this target takes the form of a *disk* of radius  $a$  and of area  $\sigma = \pi a^2$ . An electron is scattered through an angle  $\theta$  that *exceeds* the aperture semi-angle  $\alpha$  only *if* it arrives at a distance *less* than  $a$  from the nucleus,  $a$  being a function of  $\alpha$ . But relative to any given nucleus, electrons arrive *randomly* with various values of the **impact parameter**  $b$ , defined as the distance of closest approach if we *neglect* the hyperbolic curvature of the trajectory, as shown in Fig. 4-4. So if  $b < a$ , the electron is scattered through an angle greater than  $\alpha$  and is subsequently absorbed by the objective diaphragm.

By *how much* the scattering angle  $\theta$  exceeds  $\alpha$  depends on just how close the electron passes to the center of the atom: small  $b$  leads to large  $\theta$  and *vice versa*. Algebraic analysis of the force and velocity components, making use of Eq. (4.7) and Newton's second law of motion (see Appendix), gives:

$$\theta \approx K Z e^2 / (E_0 b) \quad (4.11)$$

Equation (4.11) specifies an *inverse* relation between  $b$  and  $\theta$ , as expected because electrons with a smaller impact parameter pass closer to the nucleus,

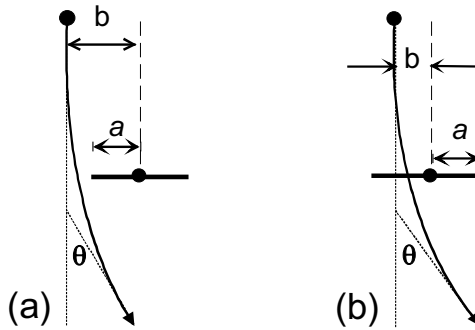


Figure 4-4. Electron trajectory for elastic scattering through an angle  $\theta$  which is (a) less than and (b) greater than the objective-aperture semi-angle  $\alpha$ . The impact parameter  $b$  is defined as the distance of closest approach to the nucleus if the particle were to continue in a straight-line trajectory. It is approximately equal to the distance of closest approach when the scattering angle (and the curvature of the trajectory) is small.

so they experience a stronger attractive force. Because Eq. (4.11) represents a general relationship, it must hold for  $\theta = \alpha$ , which corresponds to  $b = a$ . Therefore, we can rewrite Eq. (4.11) for this specific case, to give:

$$\alpha = K Z e^2 / (E_0 a) \quad (4.12)$$

As a result, the cross section for *elastic* scattering of an electron through any angle greater than  $\alpha$  can be written as:

$$\sigma_e = \pi a^2 = \pi [K Z e^2 / (\alpha E_0)]^2 = Z^2 e^4 / (16\pi \epsilon_0^2 E_0^2 \alpha^2) \quad (4.13)$$

Because  $\sigma_e$  has units of  $m^2$ , it cannot directly represent scattering probability; we need an additional factor with units of  $m^{-2}$  to provide the dimensionless number  $P_e(>\alpha)$ . In addition, our TEM specimen contains *many* atoms, each capable of scattering an incoming electron, whereas  $\sigma_e$  is the elastic cross section for a single atom. Consequently, the total probability of elastic scattering in the specimen is:

$$P_e(>\alpha) = N \sigma_e \quad (4.14)$$

where  $N$  is the number of atoms *per unit area* of the specimen (viewed in the direction of an approaching electron), sometimes called an **areal density** of atoms.

For a specimen with  $n$  atoms *per unit volume*,  $N = nt$  where  $t$  is the specimen thickness. If the specimen contains only a single element of atomic number  $A$ , the atomic density  $n$  can be written in terms of a physical density:  $\rho = (\text{mass/volume}) = (\text{atoms per unit volume}) (\text{mass per atom}) = n (Au)$ , where  $u$  is the atomic mass unit ( $1.66 \times 10^{-27}$  kg). Therefore:

$$P_e(>\alpha) = [\rho / (Au)] t \sigma = (\rho t) (Z^2 / A) e^4 / (16\pi \epsilon_0^2 u E_0^2 \alpha^2) \quad (4.15)$$

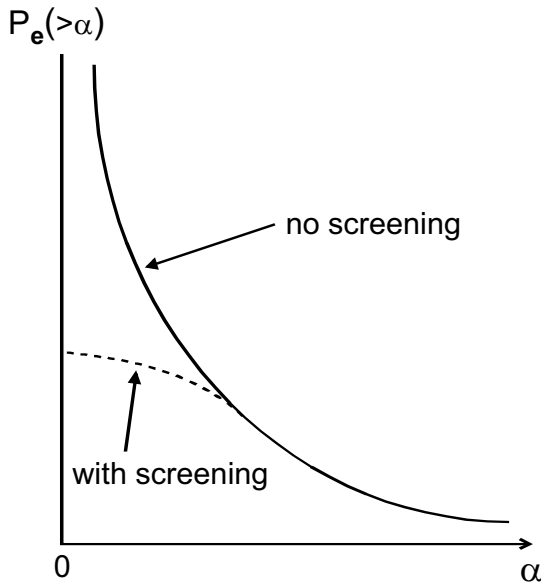


Figure 4-5. Elastic-scattering probability  $P_e(>\alpha)$ , as predicted from Eq. (4.15) (solid curve) and after including screening of the nuclear field (dashed curve).  $P_e(>0)$  represents the total probability of elastic scattering, through any angle.

Equation (4.15) indicates that the number of electrons absorbed at the angle-limiting (objective) diaphragm is proportional to the **mass-thickness** ( $\rho t$ ) of the specimen and *inversely* proportional to the square of the aperture size.

Unfortunately, Eq. (4.15) fails for the important case of small  $\alpha$ ; our formula predicts that  $P_e(>\alpha)$  increases toward infinity as the aperture angle is reduced to zero. Because any probability must be less than 1, this prediction shows that at least one of the assumptions used in our analysis is incorrect. By using Eq. (4.10) to describe the electrostatic force, we have assumed that the electrostatic field of the nucleus extends to infinity (although diminishing with distance). In practice, this field is *terminated* within a neutral atom, due to the presence of the atomic electrons that surround the nucleus. Stated another way, the electrostatic field of a given nucleus is **screened** by the atomic electrons, for locations outside that atom. Including such screening complicates the analysis but results in a scattering probability that, as  $\alpha$  falls to zero, rises asymptotically to a *finite* value  $P_e(>0)$ , the probability of elastic scattering through *any* angle; see Fig. 4-5.

Even after correction for screening, Eq. (4.15) can still give rise to an unphysical result, for if we increase the specimen thickness  $t$  sufficiently,  $P_e(>\alpha)$  becomes greater than 1. This situation arises because our formula represents a **single-scattering approximation**: we have tried to calculate the

fraction of electrons that are scattered only *once* in a specimen. For very thin specimens, this fraction increases in proportion to the specimen thickness, as implied by Eq. (4.15). But in thicker specimens, the probability of single scattering must *decrease* with increasing thickness because most electrons become scattered *several* times. If we use Poisson statistics to calculate the probability  $P_n$  of  $n$ -fold scattering, each probability comes out less than 1, as expected. In fact, the sum  $\Sigma P_n$  over all  $n$  (including  $n = 0$ ) is equal to 1, as would be expected because all electrons are transmitted (except for specimens that are far too thick for transmission microscopy).

The above arguments can be repeated for the case of *inelastic* scattering, taking the electrostatic force as  $F = K(e)(e)/r^2$  because the incident electron is now scattered by an atomic electron rather than by the nucleus. The result is an equation similar to Eq. (4.15) but with the factor  $Z^2$  missing. However, this result would apply to inelastic scattering by only a *single* atomic electron. Considering all  $Z$  electrons within the atom, the inelastic-scattering probability must be multiplied by  $Z$ , giving:

$$P_i(>\alpha) = (\rho t) (Z/A) e^4 / (16\pi\epsilon_0^2 u E_0^2 \alpha^2) \quad (4.16)$$

Comparison of Eq. (4.16) with Eq. (4.15) shows that the amount of inelastic scattering, *relative* to elastic scattering, is

$$P_i(>\alpha) / P_e(>\alpha) = 1/Z \quad (4.17)$$

Equation (4.17) predicts that inelastic scattering makes a relatively small contribution for most elements. However, it is based on Eq. (4.15), which is accurate only for larger aperture angles. For small  $\alpha$ , where screening of the nuclear field reduces the amount of elastic scattering, the inelastic/elastic ratio is much higher. More accurate theory (treating the incoming electrons as waves) and experimental measurements of the scattering show that  $P_e(>0)$  is typically proportional to  $Z^{1.5}$  (rather than  $Z^2$ ), that  $P_i(>0)$  is proportional to  $Z^{0.5}$  (rather than  $Z$ ) and that, considering scattering through all angles,

$$P_i(>0) / P_e(>0) \approx 20/Z \quad (4.18)$$

Consequently, inelastic scattering makes a significant contribution to the total scattering (through any angle) in the case of light (low- $Z$ ) elements.

Although our classical-physics analysis turns out to be rather inaccurate in predicting *absolute* scattering probabilities, the thickness and material parameters involved in Eq. (4.15) and Eq. (4.16) do provide a reasonable explanation for the contrast (variation in intensity level) in TEM images obtained from non-crystalline (amorphous) specimens such as glasses, certain kinds of polymers, amorphous thin films, and most types of biological material.

#### 4.4 Scattering Contrast from Amorphous Specimens

Most TEM images are viewed and recorded with an objective aperture (diameter  $D$ ) inserted and centered about the optic axis of the TEM objective lens (focal length  $f$ ). As represented by Eq. (3.9), this aperture absorbs electrons that are scattered through an angle greater than  $\alpha \approx 0.5D/f$ . However, any part of the *field* of view that contains *no* specimen (such as a hole or a region beyond the specimen edge) is formed from electrons that remain unscattered, so that part appears *bright* relative to the specimen. As a result, this central-aperture image is referred to as a **bright-field** image.

Biological tissue, at least in its dry state, is mainly carbon and so, for this common type of specimen, we can take  $Z = 6$ ,  $A = 12$ , and  $\rho \approx 2 \text{ g/cm}^3 = 2000 \text{ kg/m}^3$ . For a biological TEM, typical parameters are  $E_0 = 100 \text{ keV} = 1.6 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J}$  and  $\alpha \approx 0.5D/f = 10 \text{ mrad} = 0.01 \text{ rad}$ , taking an objective-lens focal length  $f = 2 \text{ mm}$  and objective-aperture diameter  $D = 40 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$ . With these values, Eq. (4.15) gives  $P_e(\alpha) \approx 0.47$  for a specimen thickness of  $t = 20 \text{ nm}$ . The same parameters inserted into Eq.(4.16) give  $P_i(>\alpha) \approx 0.08$ , and the total fraction of electrons that are absorbed by the objective diaphragm is  $P(>10 \text{ mrad}) \approx 0.47 + 0.08 = 0.54$ .

We therefore predict that more than half of the transmitted electrons are intercepted by a typical-size objective aperture, even for a very thin (20 nm) specimen. This fraction might be even larger for a thicker specimen, but our single-scattering approximation would not be valid. In practice, the specimen thickness must be less than about 200 nm, assuming an accelerating potential of 100 kV and a specimen consisting mainly of low- $Z$  elements. If the specimen is appreciably thicker, only a small fraction of the transmitted electrons pass through the objective aperture, and the bright-field image is very dim on the TEM screen.

Because  $(A/Z)$  is approximately the same ( $\approx 2$ ) for all elements, Eq. (4.16) indicates that  $P_i(>\alpha)$  increases only slowly with increasing atomic number, due to the density term  $\rho$ , which tends to increase with increasing  $Z$ . But using the same argument, Eq. (4.15) implies that  $P_e(>\alpha)$  is approximately proportional to  $\rho Z$ . Therefore specimens that contain mainly heavy elements scatter electrons more strongly and would have to be even thinner, placing unrealistic demands on the specimen preparation. Such specimens are usually examined in a “materials science” TEM that employs an accelerating voltage of 200 kV or higher, taking advantage of the reduction in  $\sigma_e$  and  $P_e$  with increasing  $E_0$ ; see Eqs. (4.13) and (4.15).

For imaging non-crystalline specimens, the main purpose of the objective aperture is to provide **scattering contrast** in the TEM image of a specimen

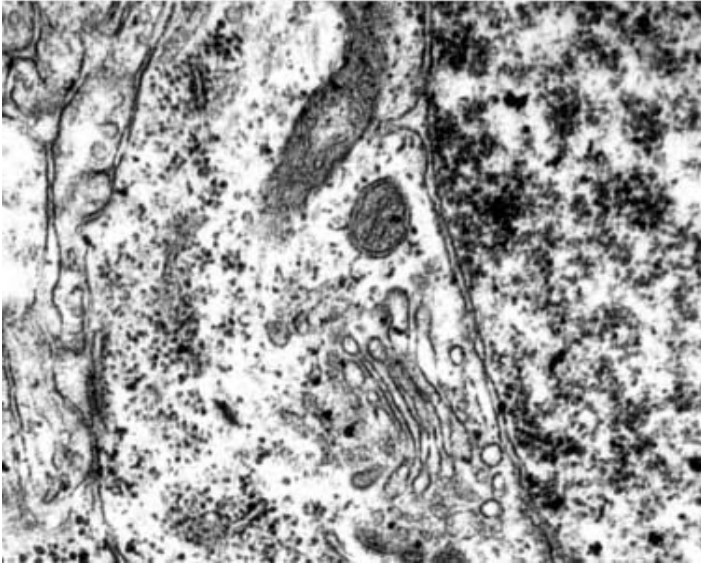
whose composition or thickness varies between different regions. Thicker regions of the sample scatter a higher fraction of the incident electrons, many of which are absorbed by the objective diaphragm, so that the *corresponding* regions in the image appear *dark*, giving rise to **thickness contrast** in the image. Regions of higher atomic number also appear dark relative to their surroundings, due mainly to an increase in the amount of *elastic* scattering, as shown by Eq. (4.15), giving **atomic-number contrast** (*Z*-contrast). Taken together, these two effects are often described as **mass-thickness contrast**. They provide the information content of TEM images of amorphous materials, in which the atoms are arranged more-or-less randomly (not in a regular array, as in a crystal), as illustrated by the following examples.

### Stained biological tissue

TEM specimens of biological (animal or plant) tissue are made by cutting very thin slices (sections) from a small block of *embedded* tissue (held together by epoxy glue) using an instrument called an **ultramicrotome** that employs a glass or diamond knife as the cutting blade. To prevent the sections from curling up, they are floated onto a water surface, which supports them evenly by surface tension. A fine-mesh copper grid (3-mm diameter, held at its edge by tweezers) is then introduced below the water surface and slowly raised, leaving the tissue section supported by the grid. After drying in air, the tissue remains attached to the grid by local mechanical and chemical forces.

Tissue sections prepared in this way are fairly uniform in thickness, therefore almost no contrast arises from the thickness term in Eq. (4.15). Their atomic number also remains approximately constant ( $Z \approx 6$  for dry tissue), so the overall contrast is very low and the specimen appears featureless in the TEM. To produce scattering contrast, the sample is chemically treated by a process called **staining**. Before or after slicing, the tissue is immersed in a solution that contains a heavy (high-*Z*) metal. The solution is absorbed *non-uniformly* by the tissue; a **positive** stain, such as lead citrate or uranyl acetate, tends to migrate to structural features (organelles) within each cell.

As illustrated in Fig. 4-6, these regions appear *dark* in the TEM image because Pb or U atoms strongly scatter the incident electrons, and most of the scattered electrons are absorbed by the objective diaphragm. A **negative** stain (such as phosphotungstic acid) tends to *avoid* cellular structures, which in the TEM image appear bright relative to their surroundings, as they contain fewer tungsten atoms.



*Figure 4-6.* Small area (about  $4\ \mu\text{m} \times 3\ \mu\text{m}$ ) of visual cortex tissue stained with uranyl acetate and lead citrate. Cell membranes and components (organelles) within a cell appear dark due to elastic scattering and subsequent absorption of scattered electrons at the objective aperture.

### Surface replicas

As an alternative to making a very thin specimen from a material, TEM images are sometimes obtained that reflect the material's surface features. For example, grain boundaries that separate small crystalline regions of a polycrystalline metal may form a groove at the external surface, as discussed in Chapter 1. These grooves are made more prominent by treating the material with a chemical etch that preferentially attacks grain-boundary regions where the atoms are bonded to fewer neighbors. The surface is then coated with a very thin layer of a plastic (polymer) or amorphous carbon, which fills the grooves; see Fig. 4-7a. This surface film is stripped off (by dissolving the metal, for example), mounted on a 3-mm-diameter grid, and examined in the TEM. The image of such a **surface replica** appears dark in the region of the surface grooves, due to the increase in thickness and the additional electron scattering.

Alternatively, the original surface might contain raised features. For example, when a solid is heated and evaporates (or sublimates) in vacuum onto a flat substrate, the thin-film coating initially consists of isolated crystallites (very small crystals) attached to the substrate. If the surface is coated with carbon (also by vacuum sublimation) and the surface replica is subsequently detached, it displays thickness contrast when viewed in a TEM.



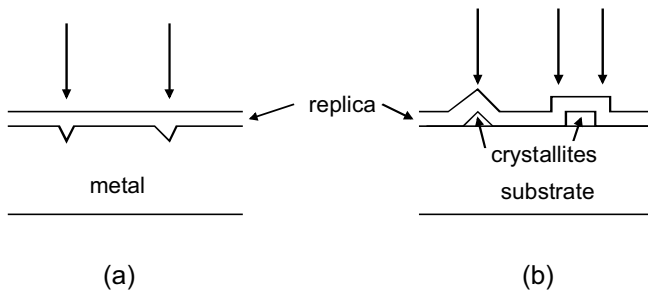


Figure 4-7. Plastic or carbon replica coating the surface of (a) a metal containing grain-boundary grooves and (b) a flat substrate containing raised crystallites. Vertical arrows indicate electrons that travel through a greater thickness of the replica material and therefore have a greater probability of being scattered and intercepted by an objective diaphragm.

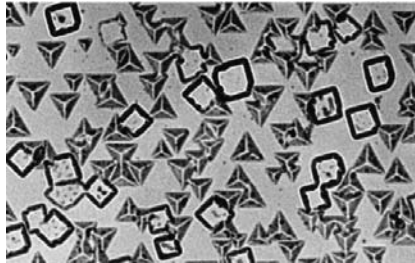


Figure 4-8. Bright-field TEM image of carbon replica of lead selenide (PbSe) crystallites (each about  $0.1\ \mu\text{m}$  across) deposited in vacuum onto a flat mica substrate.

In many cases, **thickness gradient contrast** is obtained: through diffusion, the carbon acquires the same thickness (measured perpendicular to the local surface), but its *projected* thickness (in the direction of the electron beam) is greater at the edges of protruding features (Fig. 4-7b). These features therefore appear dark *in outline* in the scattering-contrast image of the replica; see Fig. 4-8.

Because most surface replicas consist mainly of carbon, which has a relatively low scattering cross section, they tend to provide low image contrast in the TEM. Therefore, the contrast is often increased using a process known as **shadowing**. A heavy metal such as platinum is evaporated (in vacuum) at an oblique angle of incidence onto the replica, as shown in Fig. 4-9. After landing on the replica, platinum atoms are (to a first approximation) immobile, therefore raised features present in the replica cast sharp “shadows” within which platinum is *absent*. When viewed in the TEM, the shadowed replica shows strong atomic-number contrast. Relative to their surroundings, the shadowed areas appear *bright* on the TEM screen,

as seen in Fig. 4-10. However, the shadows appear dark in a photographic *negative* or if the contrast is reversed in an electronically recorded image. The result is a realistic three-dimensional appearance, similar to that of oblique illumination of a rough surface by light.

Besides increasing contrast, shadowing allows the height  $h$  of a protruding surface feature to be estimated by measurement of its shadow length. As shown in Fig. 4-9, the shadow length  $L$  is given by:

$$h = L \tan \alpha \quad (4.19)$$

Therefore,  $h$  can be measured if the shadowing has been carried out at a known angle of incidence  $\alpha$ . Shadowing has also been used to ensure the visibility of small objects such as virus particles or DNA molecules, mounted on a thin-carbon support film.

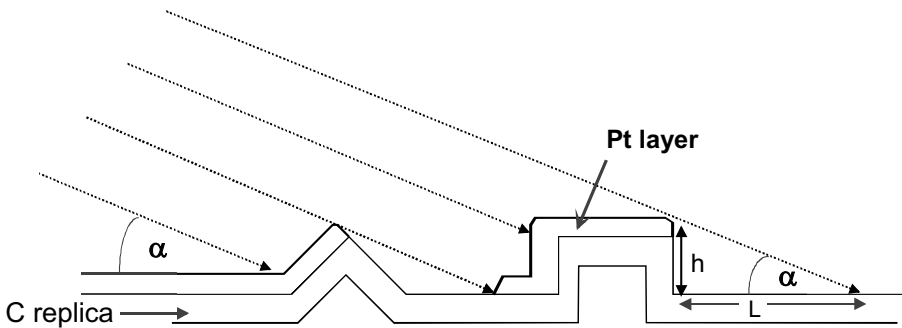


Figure 4-9. Shadowing of a surface replica by platinum atoms deposited at an angle  $\alpha$  relative to the surface.

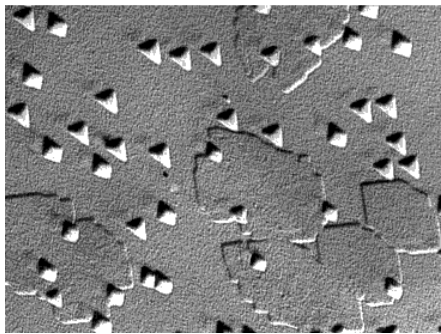


Figure 4-10. Bright-field image ( $M \approx 30,000$ ) of a platinum-shadowed carbon replica of PbSe crystallites, as it appears on the TEM screen. Compare the contrast with that of Fig. 4-8.

## 4.5 Diffraction Contrast from Polycrystalline Specimens

Many inorganic materials, such as metals and ceramics (metal oxides), are polycrystalline: they contain small crystals (**crystallites**, also known as **grains**) within which the atoms are arranged regularly in a **lattice** of rows and columns. However, the direction of atomic alignment varies randomly from one crystallite to the next; the crystallites are separated by grain boundaries where this change in orientation occurs rather abruptly (within a few atoms).

TEM specimens of a polycrystalline material can be fabricated by mechanical, chemical or electrochemical means; see Section 4.10. Individual grains then appear with different intensities in the TEM image, implying that they scatter electrons (beyond the objective aperture) to a different extent. Because this intensity variation occurs even for specimens that are uniform in thickness and composition, there must be another factor, besides those appearing in Eq. (4.15), that determines the amount and angular distribution of electron scattering within a *crystalline* material. This additional factor is the *orientation* of the atomic rows and columns relative to the incident electron beam. Because the atoms in a crystal can also be thought of as arranged in an orderly fashion on equally-spaced **atomic planes**, we can specify the orientation of the beam relative to these planes. To understand why this orientation matters, we must abandon our particle description of the incident electrons and consider them as de Broglie (matter) waves.

A useful comparison is with x-rays, which are diffracted by the atoms in a crystal. In fact, interatomic spacings are usually *measured* by recording the diffraction of *hard* x-rays, whose wavelength is comparable to the atomic spacing. The simplest way of understanding x-ray diffraction is in terms of **Bragg reflection** from atomic planes. Reflection implies that the angles of incidence and reflection are equal, as with light reflected from a mirror. But whereas a mirror reflects light with any angle of incidence, Bragg reflection occurs only when the angle of incidence (here measured between the incident direction and the planes) is equal to a Bragg angle  $\theta_B$  that satisfies **Bragg's law**:

$$n \lambda = 2 d \sin \theta_B \quad (4.20)$$

Here,  $\lambda$  is the x-ray wavelength and  $d$  is the spacing between atomic planes, measured in a direction perpendicular to the planes;  $n$  is an integer that represents the *order* of reflection, as in the case of light diffracted from an optical diffraction grating. But whereas diffraction from a grating takes place at its surface, x-rays penetrate through many planes of atoms, and diffraction occurs within a certain *volume* of the crystal, which acts as a kind of *three-*

*dimensional* diffraction grating. In accord with this concept, the diffraction condition, Eq. (4.20), involves a spacing  $d$  measured *between* diffracting planes rather than *within* a surface plane (as with a diffraction grating).

The fast electrons used in a *transmission* electron microscope also penetrate through many planes of atoms and are diffracted within crystalline regions of a solid, just like x-rays. However, their wavelength ( $\approx 0.004$  nm for  $E_0 \approx 100$  keV) is far below a typical atomic-plane spacing ( $\approx 0.3$  nm) so the Bragg angles are *small*, as required by Eq. (4.20) when  $\lambda \ll d$ . The integer  $n$  in Eq. (4.20) is usually taken as one, as  $n$ 'th order diffraction from planes of spacing  $d$  can be regarded as equivalent to first-order diffraction from planes of spacing  $d/n$ . Using the small-angle approximation, Eq. (4.20) can therefore be rewritten as:

$$\lambda \approx 2\theta_B d = \theta d \tag{4.21}$$

where  $\theta = 2\theta_B$  is the angle of scattering (deflection angle) of the electron resulting from the diffraction process; see Fig. 4-11a.

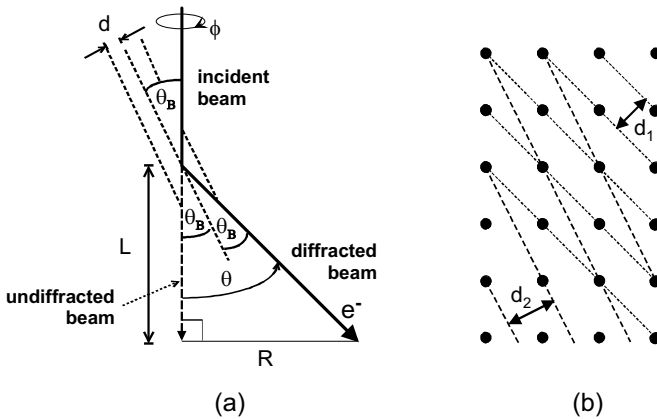


Figure 4-11. (a) Geometry of x-ray or fast-electron diffraction from atomic planes, which are shown as parallel dashed lines;  $R$  is the radius of the diffraction ring at the recording plane (not to scale). (b) Schematic cross section through a cubic lattice with an atom at each lattice point. The diagonal lines represent two sets of atomic planes (actually, their intersection with the plane of the diagram) whose spacings are  $d_1$  and  $d_2$ .

For a few particular orientations of a crystallite relative to the incident beam, Eq. (4.21) will be satisfied and a crystallite will strongly diffract the incident electrons. Provided the corresponding deflection angle  $\theta$  exceeds the semi-angle  $\alpha$  of the objective aperture, the diffracted electrons will be absorbed by the objective diaphragm and the crystallite will appear dark in the TEM image. Crystallites whose atomic-plane orientations do *not* satisfy Eq. (4.21) will appear bright, as most electrons passing through them will

remain *undiffracted* (undeviated) and will pass through the objective aperture. The grain structure of a polycrystalline material can therefore be seen in a TEM image as an intensity variation between different regions; see Fig. 4-12a or Fig. 4-21. A TEM image is said to display **diffraction contrast** in any situation in which the intensity variations arise from differences in diffracting conditions between different regions of the specimen.

## 4.6 Dark-Field Images

Instead of selecting the undiffracted beam of electrons to form the image, we could horizontally displace the objective aperture so that it admits diffracted electrons. Strongly diffracting regions of specimen would then appear *bright* relative to their surroundings, resulting in a **dark-field image** because any part of the field of view that contains *no* specimen would be dark.

Figure 4-12b is an example of dark-field image and illustrates the fact that the contrast is *inverted* relative to a bright-field image of the same region of specimen. In fact, if it were possible to collect *all* of the scattered electrons to form the dark-field image, the two images would be **complementary**: the sum of their intensities would be constant (equivalent to zero contrast).

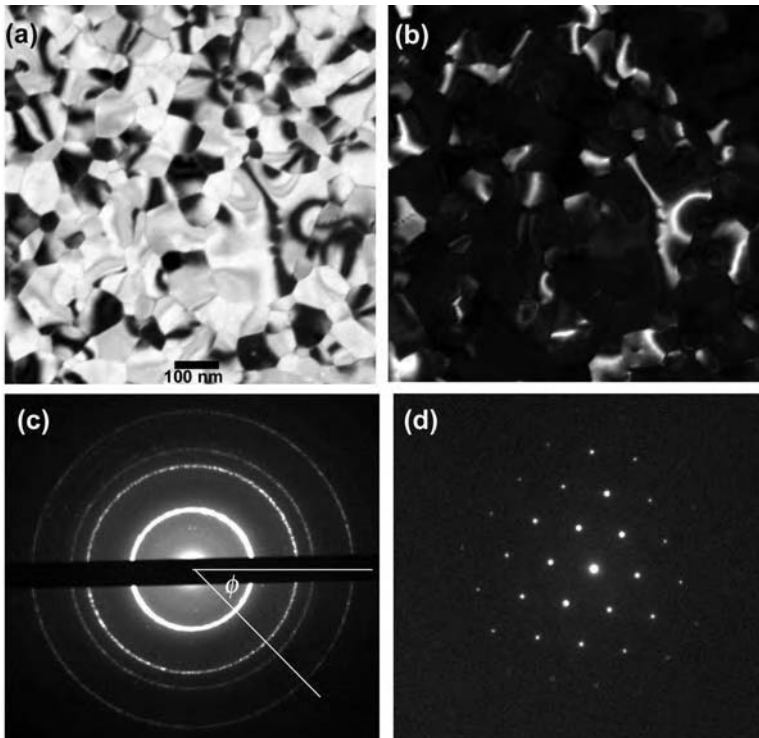
Unless stated otherwise, TEM micrographs are usually *bright-field* images created with an objective aperture centered about the optic axis. However, one advantage of a dark-field image is that, if the displacement of the objective aperture has been calibrated, the atomic-plane spacing ( $d$ ) of a bright image feature is known. This information can sometimes be used to identify crystalline precipitates in an alloy, for example.

With the procedure just described, the image has inferior resolution compared to a bright-field image because electrons forming the image pass through the imaging lenses at larger angles relative to the optic axis, giving rise to increased spherical and chromatic aberration. However, such loss of resolution can be avoided by keeping the objective aperture on-axis and re-orienting the electron beam arriving at the specimen, using the illumination-tilt deflection coils that are built into the illumination system of a materials-science TEM.

## 4.7 Electron-Diffraction Patterns

Diffraction is the *elastic* scattering of electrons (deflection by the Coulomb field of atomic nuclei) in a *crystalline* material. The regularity of the spacing of the atomic nuclei results in a *redistribution* of the angular dependence of scattering probability, in comparison with that obtained from a single atom

(discussed in Section 4.3). Instead of a *continuous* angular distribution, as depicted in Fig. 4-5, the scattering is concentrate'd into sharp peaks (known as Bragg peaks; see Fig. 4-12d) that occur at scattering angles that are *twice* the Bragg angle  $\theta_B$  for atomic planes of a particular orientation.



*Figure 4-12.* (a) Bright-field TEM image of a polycrystalline thin film of bismuth, including bend contours that appear dark. (b) Dark-field image of the same area; bend contours appear bright. (c) Ring diffraction pattern obtained from many crystallites; for recording purposes, the central (0,0,0) diffraction spot has been masked by a wire. (d) Spot diffraction pattern recorded from a single Bi crystallite, whose trigonal crystal axis was parallel to the incident beam. Courtesy of Marek Malac, National Institute of Nanotechnology, Canada.

This angular distribution of scattering can be displayed on the TEM screen by weakening the intermediate lens, so that the intermediate and projector lenses magnify the small diffraction pattern initially formed at the back-focal plane of the objective lens. Figure 4-12c is typical of the pattern obtained from a polycrystalline material. It consists of concentric rings, centered on a bright central spot that represents the *undiffracted* electrons. Each ring corresponds to atomic planes of different orientation and different interplanar spacing  $d$ , as indicated in Fig. 4-11b.

Close examination of the rings reveals that they consist of a large number of spots, each arising from Bragg reflection from an individual crystallite. Equation (4.21) predicts only the *radial* angle ( $\theta = 2\theta_B$ ) that determines the distance of a spot from the center of the diffraction pattern. The azimuthal angle  $\phi$  of a spot is determined by the azimuthal orientation of a crystallite about the incident-beam direction (the optic axis). Because the grains in a polycrystalline specimen are randomly oriented, diffraction spots occur at all azimuthal angles and give the appearance of continuous rings if many grains lie within the path of the electron beam (grain size  $\ll$  beam diameter at the specimen).

The radius  $R$  of a given diffraction ring depends not only on the scattering angle  $\theta$  but also on how much the TEM magnifies the initial diffraction pattern formed at the objective back-focal plane. If there were no imaging lenses and a diffraction pattern were recorded at a distance  $L$  from the specimen, simple geometry (Fig. 4-11a) gives:

$$R = L \tan \theta \quad (4.22)$$

In practice, imaging lenses are present and the relationship between  $R$  and  $\theta$  depends on the excitation of these lenses. We can still use Eq. (4.22) to represent this relationship, however  $L$  no longer represents a real physical distance. Instead,  $L$  is a measure of the *scale* of the diffraction pattern and is known as the **camera length**. Its value can be changed (typically over the range 10 – 150 cm) by varying the excitation current of the intermediate lens. In a modern TEM, the camera length is displayed on the control panel when diffraction mode is selected.

Knowing  $L$  and (from the accelerating voltage  $V_0$ ) the wavelength  $\lambda$ , the  $d$ -spacing of each set of atomic planes that contribute to the diffraction pattern can be calculated using Eq. (4.21) and Eq. (4.22). The nearest-neighbor spacing of atoms in the specimen is, in general, not equal to  $d$ ; it depends also on the arrangement of the atoms within the **unit cell** (the smallest repeat unit) of the crystal. Many metals, such as copper and aluminum, have a face-centered cubic (fcc) unit cell (see Fig. 4-13), for which:

$$d = a / (h^2 + k^2 + l^2)^{1/2} \quad (4.23)$$

Here,  $a$  is the **lattice parameter** (dimension of the unit cell), and  $h$ ,  $k$ , and  $l$  are integers (known as **Miller indices**) that describe the orientation of the planes (of spacing  $d$ ) relative to the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  crystal axes (which are parallel to the edges of the unit cell). From Eq. (4.23), larger Miller indices correspond to smaller  $d$  and, according to Eq. (4.21) and Eq. (4.22), to *larger*  $\theta_B$  and  $R$ .

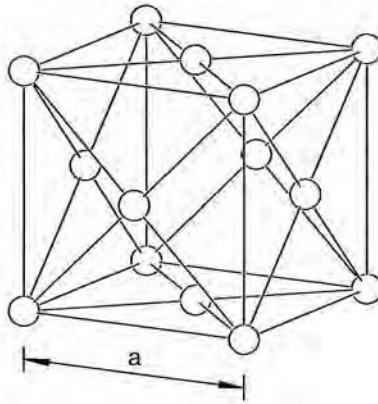


Figure 4-13. Unit cell for a face-centered cubic crystal: a cube of side  $a$  with atoms located at each corner and at the center of each face. Another common crystal structure is the body-centered cubic (bcc) structure, whose unit cell is a cube with eight corner atoms and a single atom located at the geometrical center of the cube.

For a material whose lattice parameter is known (for example, from x-ray diffraction), the expected  $d$ -spacings can be calculated, using the additional condition that (for the fcc structure)  $h$ ,  $k$ , and  $l$  must be *all odd or all even*. Therefore, the first few rings in the diffraction pattern of a polycrystalline fcc metal correspond to

$$(h\ k\ l) = (1\ 1\ 1), (2\ 0\ 0), (2\ 2\ 0), (3\ 1\ 1), (2\ 2\ 2), \dots \quad (4.24)$$

Knowing  $a$ , the  $d$ -spacing for each ring can be calculated using Eq. (4.23) and its electron-scattering angle  $\theta$  obtained from Eq. (4.21). From Eq. (4.22), a value of  $L$  can be deduced for each ring and these individual values averaged to give a more accurate value of the camera length. Recording the diffraction pattern of a material with *known* structure and lattice parameter therefore provides a way of *calibrating* the camera length, for a given intermediate-lens setting.

Knowing  $L$ , the use of Eq. (4.22) and then Eq. (4.21) can provide a list of the  $d$ -spacings represented in the electron-diffraction pattern recorded from an *unknown* material. In favorable cases, these interplanar spacings can then be matched to the  $d$ -values calculated for different crystal structures, taking  $h$ ,  $k$ , and  $l$  from rules similar to Eq. (4.24) but different for each structure, and with  $a$  as an adjustable parameter. In this way, both the lattice parameter and the crystal structure of the unknown material can be determined, which may enable the material to be identified from previously-tabulated information.



Unfortunately, the value of  $L$  is sensitive to small differences in specimen height (relative to the objective-lens polepieces) and to magnetic hysteresis of the TEM lenses, such that a given lens current does not correspond to a unique magnetic field or focusing power. Electron diffraction is therefore of limited accuracy:  $d$ -spacings can be measured to about 1%, compared with a few parts per million in the case of x-ray diffraction (where no lenses are used). However, x-ray diffraction requires a macroscopic specimen, with a volume approaching  $1 \text{ mm}^3$ . In contrast, electron-diffraction data can be obtained from microscopic volumes ( $< 1 \text{ }\mu\text{m}^3$ ) by use of a thin specimen and an area-selecting aperture or by focusing the incident beam into a very small probe. Electron diffraction has been used to identify sub-micrometer precipitates in metal alloys, for example.

Some materials such as silicon can be fabricated as **single-crystal** material, without grain boundaries. Others have a crystallite size that is sufficiently large that a focused electron beam passes through only a single grain. In these cases, there is *no* azimuthal randomization of the diffraction spots: the diffraction pattern is a **spot pattern**, as illustrated in Fig. 4-12d. Equation (4.22) still applies to each spot,  $R$  being its distance from the central (0 0 0) spot. In this case, the *symmetry* of the diffraction spots is related to the symmetry of arrangement of atoms in the crystal. For example, a cubic crystal produces a *square* array of diffracted spots, *provided* the incident beam travels down one of the crystal axes (parallel to the edges of the unit cell). Using a double-tilt specimen holder, a specimen can often be oriented to give a recognizable diffraction pattern, which helps toward identifying the phase and/or chemical composition of small crystalline regions within it.

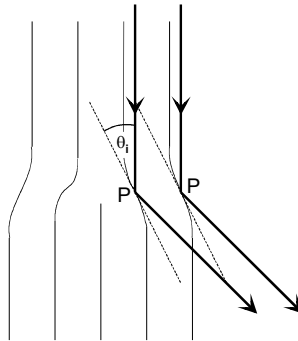
## 4.8 Diffraction Contrast within a Single Crystal

Close examination of the TEM image of a polycrystalline specimen shows there can be a variation of electron intensity *within* each crystallite. This diffraction contrast arises either from atomic-scale defects within the crystal *or* from the crystalline nature of the material itself, combined with the wave nature of the transmitted electrons, as we will now discuss.

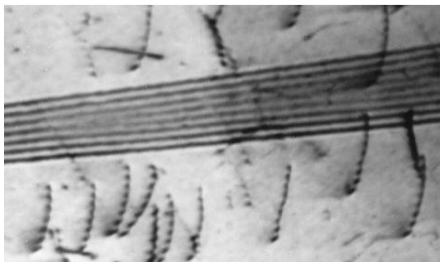
Defects in a crystal, where the atoms are displaced from their regular lattice-site positions, can take several different forms. A **dislocation** is an example of a *line* defect. It represents either the termination of an atomic plane within the crystal (edge dislocation) or the axis of a “spiral staircase” where the atomic planes are displaced parallel to the dislocation line (screw dislocation). The structure of an edge dislocation is depicted in Fig. 4-14, which shows how planes of atoms bend in the vicinity of the dislocation

core, in order to accommodate the extra “half-plane” of atoms. Because the Bragg angles for electron diffraction are small, it is likely that, at some places within this strained region, the bending causes the angle between an atomic plane and the incident beam to become approximately equal to the Bragg angle  $\theta_B$ . At such locations, electrons are strongly diffracted, and most of these scattered electrons will be absorbed at the TEM objective aperture. Consequently, the dislocation appears dark in the TEM image, as shown in Fig. 4-15.

Because they are mobile, dislocations play an important role in the deformation of metals by applied mechanical stress. Although they had been predicted to explain a discrepancy between the measured and theoretical strengths of metals, TEM images provided the first direct evidence for the existence and morphology (shape) of dislocations; see Fig. 1-11 on p. 14.



*Figure 4-14.* Bending of the atomic planes around an edge dislocation, whose direction runs perpendicular to the plane of the diagram. At points P, the angle of incidence  $\theta_i$  is equal to the Bragg angle of the incident electrons, which are therefore strongly diffracted.



*Figure 4-15.* Dislocations and a stacking fault in cobalt metal. The dislocations appear as curved dark lines running through the crystal, whereas the stacking fault is represented by a series of almost-parallel interference fringes. (The specimen thickness is slightly less on the left of the picture, resulting in a reduction in the projected width of the stacking fault.) Courtesy of Prof. S. Sheinin, University of Alberta.

Crystals can also contain *point* defects, the simplest example being an **atomic vacancy**: a missing atom. Lattice planes become distorted in the immediate vicinity of the vacancy (as atoms are pulled towards the center) but only to a small degree, therefore single vacancies are not usually visible in a TEM image. However, the local strain produced by a *cluster* of vacancies (a small void) gives rise to a characteristic bright/dark diffraction contrast; see Fig. 4-16.

One example of a *planar* defect is the **stacking fault**, a plane within the crystal structure where the atomic planes are abruptly displaced by a fraction of the interatomic spacing. In a TEM image, the stacking fault gives rise to a series of narrowly-spaced fringes (see Fig. 4-15) whose explanation requires a Bloch-wave treatment of the electrons, as outlined below.

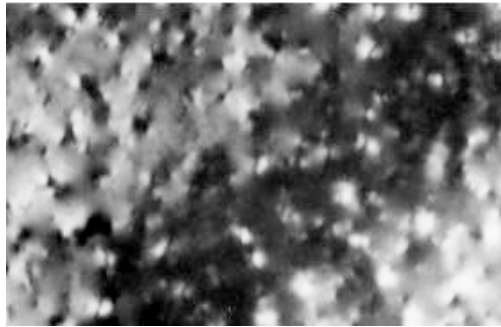


Figure 4-16. Diffraction-contrast image ( $1.0\ \mu\text{m} \times 1.5\ \mu\text{m}$ ) of point-defect clusters produced in graphite by irradiation with 200-keV electrons at an elevated temperature. A bend contour, visible as a broad dark band, runs diagonally across the image.

Other features in diffraction-contrast images originate from the fact that the crystal can become slightly bent as a result of internal strain. This strain may arise from the crystal-growth process or from subsequent mechanical deformation. As a result, the orientation of the lattice planes gradually changes across a TEM specimen, and at some locations the Bragg equation is satisfied, resulting in strong diffraction and occurrence of a **bend contour** as a dark band in the image; see Fig. 4-16. Unlike our previous examples, the bend contour does *not* represent a *localized* feature present in the specimen. If the specimen or the TEM illumination is tilted slightly, relative to the original condition, the Bragg condition is satisfied at some *different* location within the crystal, and the bend contour *shifts* to a new position in the image.

**Thickness fringes** occur in a crystalline specimen whose thickness is non-uniform. Frequently, they take the form of dark and bright fringes that run parallel to the edge of the specimen, where its thickness falls to zero. To

understand the reason for these fringes, imagine the specimen oriented so that a particular set of lattice planes (indices  $h k l$ ) satisfies the Bragg condition. As electrons penetrate further into the specimen and become diffracted, the intensity of the  $(h k l)$  diffracted beam increases. However, these diffracted electrons are traveling in exactly the right direction to be Bragg-reflected back into the original  $(0 0 0)$  direction of incidence (central spot in Fig. 4-12d). So beyond a certain distance into the crystal, the diffracted-beam intensity decreases and the  $(0 0 0)$  intensity starts to increase. At a certain depth (the **extinction distance**), the  $(h k l)$  intensity becomes almost zero and the  $(0 0 0)$  intensity regains its maximum value. If the specimen is thicker than the extinction depth, the above process is repeated.

In the case of a wedge-shaped (variable-thickness) crystal, the angular distribution of electrons leaving its exit surface corresponds to the diffraction condition prevailing at a depth equal to its thickness. In terms of the diffraction pattern, this means that the intensities of the  $(0 0 0)$  and  $(h k l)$  components *oscillate* as a function of crystal thickness. For a TEM with an *on-axis* objective aperture, the *bright-field* image will show alternate bright and dark thickness fringes. With an off-axis objective aperture, similar but *displaced* fringes appear in the dark-field image; their intensity distribution is complementary to that of the bright-field image.

A mathematical analysis of this intensity oscillation is based on the fact that electrons traveling through a crystal are represented by Bloch waves, whose wave-function amplitude  $\psi$  is modified as a result of the regularly-repeating electrostatic potential of the atomic nuclei. An electron-wave description of the *conduction* electrons in a crystalline solid makes use of this same concept. In fact, the degree to which these electrons are diffracted determines whether solid is an electrical conductor or an insulator, as discussed in many textbooks of solid-state physics.

## 4.9 Phase Contrast in the TEM

In addition to diffraction (or scattering) contrast, features seen in some TEM images depend on the *phase* of the electron waves at the exit plane of the specimen. Although this phase cannot be measured directly, it gives rise to interference between electron waves that have passed through different regions of the specimen. Such electrons are brought together when a TEM image is *defocused* by changing the objective-lens current slightly. Unlike the case of diffraction-contrast images, a large-diameter objective aperture (or no aperture) is used to enable several diffracted beams to contribute to the image.

A simple example of phase contrast is the appearance, in a defocused image, of a dark **Fresnel fringe** just inside a small hole in the specimen. The separation of this fringe from the edge of the hole increases with the amount of defocus. In fact, its separation from the edge will change if the objective focusing power varies for electrons traveling along different azimuthal directions relative to the optic axis, *i.e.*, if objective astigmatism is present. Therefore, the Fresnel fringe inside a circular hole is sometimes used as a guide to adjusting the objective-lens stigmator.

Phase contrast also occurs as a result of the regular spacing of atoms in a crystal, particularly if the specimen is oriented so that columns of atoms are parallel to the incident electron beam. The contrast observable in high magnification ( $M > 500,000$ ) images is of this type and allows the lattice of atoms (projected onto a plane perpendicular to the incident direction) to be seen directly in the image. The electron-wave explanation is that electrons traveling down the center of an atomic column have their phase *retarded* relative to those that travel in between the columns. However, the basic effect can be understood by treating the electrons as particles, as follows.

In Fig. 4-17, we represent a crystalline specimen in the TEM by a single layer of atoms (of equal spacing  $d$ ) irradiated by a parallel electron beam with a uniform current density. The nuclei of the atoms elastically scatter the electrons through angles that depend *inversely* on the impact parameter  $b$  of each electron, as indicated by Eq. (4.11). If the objective lens is focused on the atom plane and all electrons are collected to form the image, the uniform illumination will ensure that the image contrast is zero. If now the objective current is increased slightly (**overfocus** condition), the TEM will image a plane *below* the specimen, where the electrons are more numerous at positions vertically below the atom positions, causing the atoms to appear *bright* in the final image. On the other hand, if the objective lens is weakened in order to image a virtual-object plane just *above* the specimen, the electrons appear to come from positions halfway between the atoms, as shown by the dashed lines that represent extrapolations of the electron trajectories. In this **underfocus** condition, the image will show atoms that appear *dark* relative to their surroundings.

The optimum amount of defocus  $\Delta z$  can be estimated by considering a close collision with impact parameter  $b \ll d$ . Geometry of the right-angled triangle in Fig. 4-17 gives  $\Delta z = (d/2 - b)/\tan\theta \approx (d/2)/(\tan\theta) \approx d/(2\theta)$  if the scattering angle  $\theta$  is small. But for atoms of uniform spacing  $d$ , the scattering angle should satisfy Bragg's law, therefore Eq. (4.21) implies  $\theta \approx \lambda/d$  and:

$$\Delta z \approx d/(2\theta) \approx d^2/(2\lambda) \quad (4.25)$$

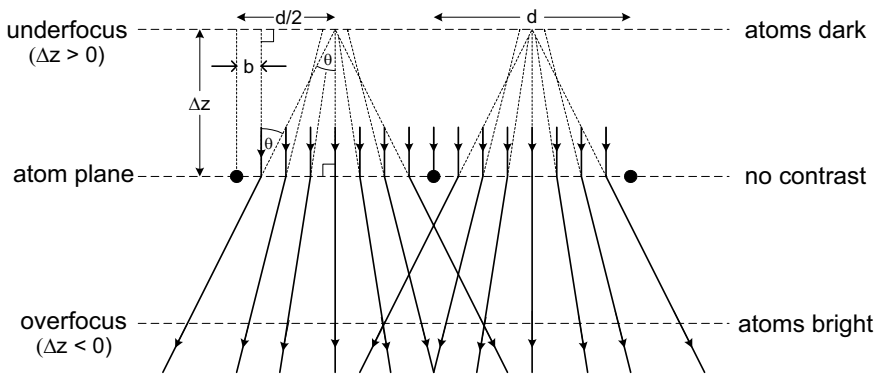


Figure 4-17. Equally spaced atomic nuclei that are elastically scattering the electrons within a broad incident beam, which provides a continuous range of impact parameter  $b$ . The electron current density appears non-uniform at planes above and below the atom plane.

For  $E_0 = 200$  keV,  $\lambda = 2.5$  pm and taking  $d = 0.3$  nm, we obtain  $\Delta z \approx 18$  nm, therefore the amount of defocus required for atomic resolution is small. Wave-optical theory gives expression identical to Eq. (4.25), for an objective lens with no spherical aberration. In practice, spherical aberration is important and should be included in the theory (Reimer, 1998). Clearly, the interpretation of phase-contrast images requires that the spherical-aberration coefficient of the objective and the amount of defocus are known. In fact, a detailed interpretation of atomic-resolution **lattice images** often requires recording a **through-focus series** of images with positive and negative  $\Delta z$ .

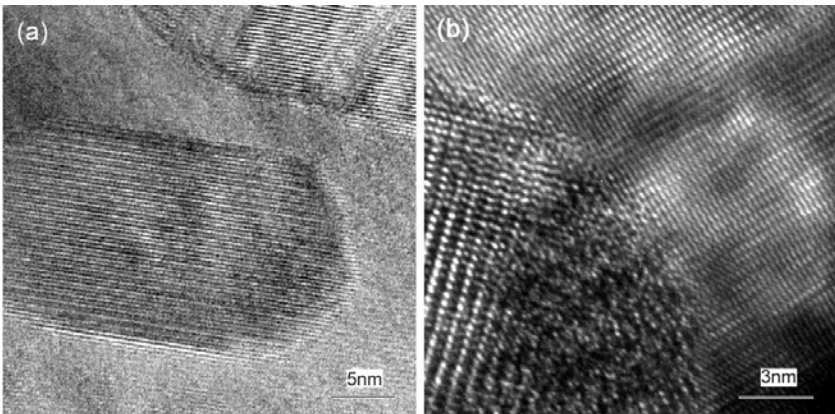


Figure 4-18. (a) Lattice image of ZnS crystals embedded within a sapphire matrix. (b) Detail of a grain boundary between a PbS crystal and its sapphire matrix. Courtesy of Al Meldrum, University of Alberta.

High-magnification phase-contrast images are particularly valuable for examining the atomic structure of *interfaces* within a solid, such as the grain boundaries within a polycrystalline material or the interface between a deposited film and its substrate; see Fig. 4-18. Sometimes the lattice fringes (which represent ordered planes of atoms) extend right up to the boundary, indicating an abrupt interface. In other cases, they disappear a short distance from the interface, as the material becomes amorphous. Such amorphous layers can have a profound effect on the mechanical or electrical properties of a material. A further type of phase-contrast image occurs in specimens that are strongly magnetic (ferromagnetic), such as iron, cobalt, and alloys containing these metals. Again, phase contrast is produced only when the specimen is defocused. The images are known as **Lorentz images**; they are capable of revealing the magnetic-domain structure of the specimen, which is not necessarily related to its crystallographic structure. But the objective lens of a modern TEM normally generates a high field that is likely to change the domain structure, so Lorentz microscopy is usually performed with the objective turned off or considerably weakened. With only the intermediate and projector lenses operating, the image magnification is relatively low.

Although related to the phase of the electron exit wave, these Lorentz images can again be understood by considering the electron as a particle that undergoes angular deflection when it travels through the field within each magnetic domain; see Fig. 4-19a. If the magnetic field has a strength  $B$  in the  $y$ -direction, an incident electron traveling with speed  $v$  in the  $z$ -direction experiences a force  $F_x = evB$  and an acceleration  $a_x = F_x/m$  in the  $x$ -direction. After traveling through a sample of thickness  $t$  in a time  $T = t/v$ , the electron (relativistic mass  $m$ ) has acquired a lateral velocity  $v_x = a_x T = (evB/m)(t/v)$ .

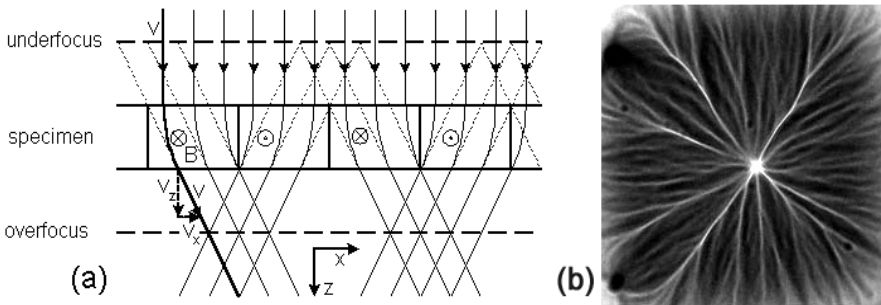


Figure 4-19. (a) Magnetic deflection of electrons within adjacent domains of a ferromagnetic specimen. (b) Lorentz image showing magnetic-domain boundaries in a thin film of cobalt.

From the velocity triangle of Fig. 4-19a, the angle of deflection of the electron (due to the magnetic field inside the specimen) is

$$\theta \approx \tan \theta = v_x / v_z \approx v_x / v = (e/m)(Bt/v) \quad (4.26)$$

Taking  $B = 1.5 \text{ T}$ ,  $t = 100 \text{ nm}$ ,  $v = 2.1 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}$ , and  $m = 1.3 \times 10^{-30} \text{ kg}$  (for  $E_0 = 200 \text{ keV}$ ), Eq. (4.26) gives  $\theta \approx 0.1 \text{ mrad}$ . The deflection is therefore small but can be detected by focusing on a plane sufficiently far above or below the specimen (see Fig. 4-19a) so that the magnetic domains become visible, as in Fig. 4-19b.

With the objective lens (focal length  $f$ ) turned on, this deflection causes a  $y$ -displacement (of each diffraction spot) equal to  $\pm \theta f$  at the objective-aperture plane, due to electrons that have passed through adjacent domains. This can be sufficient to produce an observable splitting of the spots in the electron-diffraction pattern recorded from a crystalline specimen. If the TEM objective aperture or illumination tilt is adjusted to admit only *one* spot from a pair, a **Foucault image** is produced in which adjacent magnetic domains appear with different intensity. Its advantage (over a Fresnel image) is that the image appears in focus and can have good spatial resolution, allowing crystalline defects such as grain boundaries to be observed in relation to the magnetic domains (Shindo and Oikawa, 2002).

## 4.10 TEM Specimen Preparation

We have seen earlier in this chapter that electrons are strongly scattered within a solid, due to the large forces acting on an electron when it passes through the electrostatic field within each atom. As a result, the thickness of a TEM specimen must be very small: usually in the range 10 nm to 1  $\mu\text{m}$ . TEM specimen preparation involves ensuring that the thickness of at least *some* regions of the specimen are within this thickness range. Depending on the materials involved, specimen preparation can represent the bulk of the work involved in transmission electron microscopy.

Common methods of specimen preparation are summarized in Fig. 4-20. Practical details of these techniques can be found in books such as Williams and Carter (1996) or Goodhew (1985). Here we just summarize the main methods, to enable the reader to get some feel for the principles involved. Usually the material of interest must be *reduced* in thickness, and the initial reduction involves a **mechanical** method. When the material is in the form of a block or rod, a thin ( $< 1 \text{ mm}$ ) slice can be made by sawing or cutting. For hard materials such as quartz or silicon, a “diamond wheel” (a fast-rotating disk whose edge is impregnated with diamond particles) is used to provide a relatively clean cut.



At this stage it is convenient to cut a 3-mm-diameter disk out of the slice. For reasonably soft metals (*e.g.*, aluminum, copper), a mechanical punch may be used. For harder materials, an **ultrasonic drill** is necessary; it consists of a thin-walled tube (internal diameter = 3 mm) attached to a *piezoelectric* crystal that changes slightly in length when a voltage is applied between electrodes on its surfaces; see Fig. 4-20a. The tube is lowered onto the slice, which has been bonded to a solid support using by heat-setting wax and its top surface pre-coated with a silicon-carbide slurry (SiC powder mixed with water). Upon applying a high-frequency ac voltage, the tube oscillates vertically thousands of times per second, driving SiC particles against the sample and cutting an annular groove in the slice. When the slice has been cut through completely, the wax is melted and the 3-mm disk is retrieved with tweezers.

The disk is then thinned further by polishing with abrasive paper (coated with diamond or silicon carbide particles) or by using a **dimple grinder**. In the latter case (Fig. 4-20b), a metal wheel rotates rapidly against the surface (covered with a SiC slurry or diamond paste) while the specimen disk is rotated slowly about a vertical axis. The result is a dimpled specimen whose thickness is 10 – 50  $\mu\text{m}$  at the center but greater (100 – 400  $\mu\text{m}$ ) at the outside, which provides the mechanical strength needed for easy handling.

In the case of biological tissue, a common procedure is to use an **ultramicrotome** to directly cut slices  $\approx$  100 nm or more in thickness. The tissue block is lowered onto a glass or diamond knife that *cleaves* the material apart (Fig. 4-20c). The ultramicrotome can also be used to cut thin slices of the softer metals, such as aluminum.

Some inorganic materials (*e.g.*, graphite, mica) have a layered structure, with weak forces between sheets of atoms, and are readily cleaved apart by inserting the tip of a knife blade. Repeated **cleavage**, achieved by attaching adhesive tape to each surface and pulling apart, can reduce the thickness to below 1  $\mu\text{m}$ . After dissolving the adhesive, thin flakes are mounted on 3-mm TEM grids. Other materials, such as silicon, can sometimes be persuaded to cleave along a plane cut at a small angle relative to a natural (crystallographic) cleavage plane. If so, a second cleavage along a crystallographic plane results in a wedge of material whose thin end is transparent to electrons. Mechanical cleavage is also involved when a material is ground into a fine powder, using a pestle and mortar, for example (Fig. 4-20d). The result is a fine powder, whose particles or flakes may be thin enough for electron transmission. They are dispersed onto a 3-mm TEM grid covered with a thin carbon film (sometimes containing small holes so that some particles are supported only at their edges).

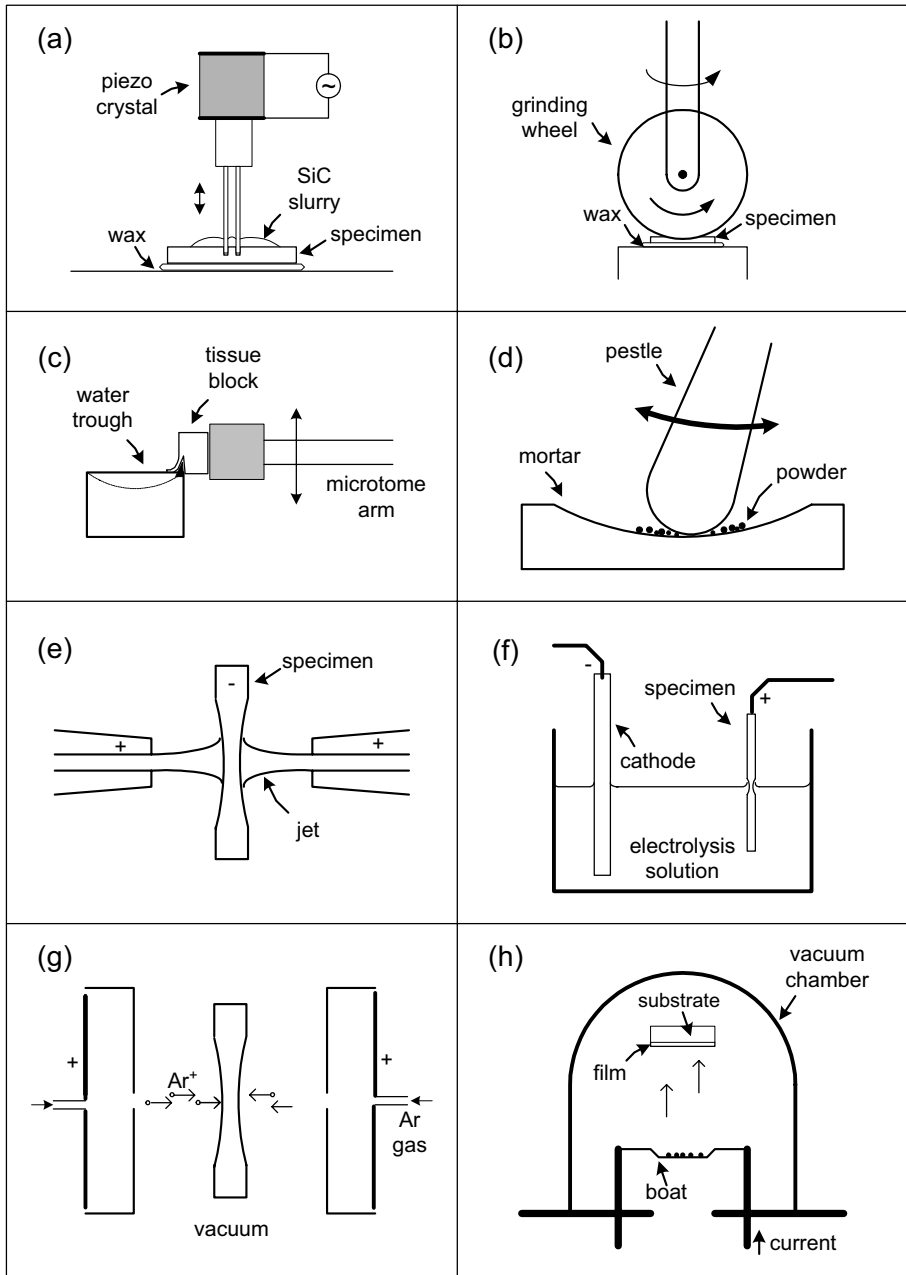


Figure 4-20. Procedures used in making TEM specimens: (a) disk cutting by ultrasonic drill, (b) dimple grinding, (c) ultramicrotomy, (d) grinding to a powder, (e) chemical jet thinning, (f) electrochemical thinning, (g) ion-beam thinning, and (h) vacuum deposition of a thin film. Methods (a) – (d) are mechanical, (e) and (f) are chemical, (g) and (h) are vacuum techniques.

All of the above methods involve the application of a *mechanical* force to achieve thinning. Unfortunately, for all but the most well-behaved materials (e.g., biological tissue, layer materials, silicon), the specimen becomes extremely fragile and cannot be mechanically thinned below about 1  $\mu\text{m}$ . In addition, the mechanical forces involved may leave a damaged surface layer, containing a high density of defects such as dislocations. This damage is undesirable if the TEM is being used to study the *original* defect structure of the specimen. Therefore, some non-mechanical method is commonly used for the final thinning.

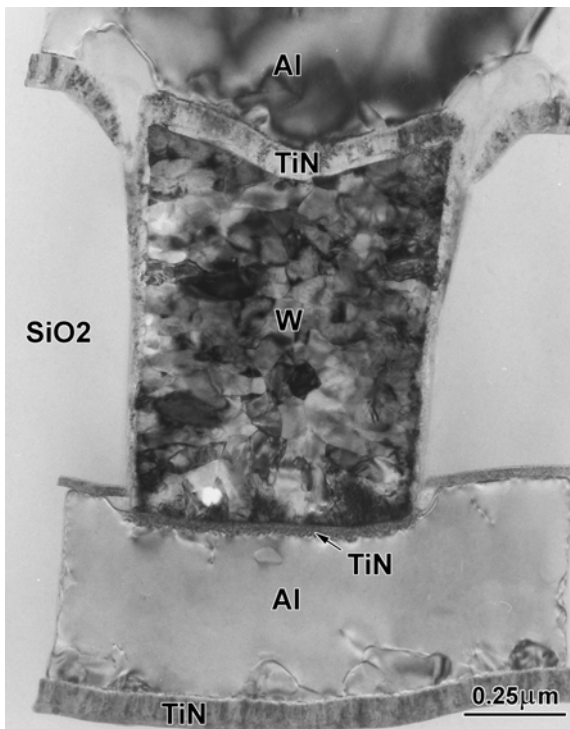
One such method is **chemical thinning**, in which a chemical solution dissolves the original surface and reduces the specimen thickness to a value suitable for TEM imaging. In the simplest case, a thin piece of material is floated onto the surface of a chemical solution that attacks its lower surface; the sample is retrieved (e.g. by picking up by a TEM grid held in tweezers) before it dissolves completely. More commonly, a jet of chemical solution is directed at one or both surfaces of a thin disk. As soon as a small hole forms in the center (detected by the transmission of a light beam), the polishing solution is replaced by rinse water. If the procedure is successful, regions of the specimen surrounding the hole are thin enough for TEM examination.

Alternatively, **electrochemical thinning** is carried out with a direct current flowing between the specimen (at a negative potential) and a positive electrode, immersed in a chemical solution. In the original window-frame method (Fig. 4-20f), the specimen is in the form of a thin sheet (1 cm or more in height and width) whose four edges are previously painted with protective lacquer to prevent erosion at the edge. When partially immersed in the electrolytic solution, thinning is most rapid at the liquid/air interface, which perforates first. Small pieces of foil are cut adjacent to the perforated edge and mounted on a TEM grid. Nowadays, electrochemical thinning is usually done using the jet-thinning geometry (Fig. 4-20e), by applying a dc voltage between the specimen and jet electrodes. Recipes for the solutions used in chemical and electrochemical thinning are given in Goodhew (1985). When thinning metals, glycerin is sometimes added to the solution to make the liquid more *viscous*, helping to give the thinned specimen a *polished* (microscopically smooth) surface.

Increasingly, **ion-beam thinning** is used for the final thinning stage, particularly of materials that are chemically inert. Following mechanical thinning (if necessary), a 3mm-diameter thin disk of the material is placed in a vacuum system, where it is bombarded by argon ions produced by a gas discharge within an ion gun. These ions transfer energy to surface atoms and remove the material by the process of sputtering; see Fig. 4-20g. A *focused* ion beam (**FIB**) machine uses a beam of gallium ions to cut thin slices, often

of a semiconductor material. This instrument also gives an electron or ion-beam image of the surface of the specimen, allowing the ion beam to be positioned and scanned along a line in order to cut a slice of material at a precise location. In this way, it is possible to prepare a TEM specimen that represents a cross section through a particular component; see Fig. 4-21.

Instead of thinning a bulk material, TEM specimens are sometimes *built up* in thickness by **thin-film deposition**. Typically, the material is placed in a tungsten “boat” that is electrically heated in vacuum, causing the material to evaporate and then condense onto a substrate; see Fig. 4.20h. If the substrate is soluble (for example, alkali halides dissolve in water), the film is floated onto the liquid surface and captured on a TEM grid, similar to thin sections of biological tissue. Vacuum-deposited thin films are used in the electronics and optical industries but are usually on insoluble substrates such as silicon or glass. For TEM examination, the substrate must be thinned down, for example by dimple grinding or jet thinning from its back surface.



*Figure 4-21.* Cross-sectional TEM image showing a polycrystalline tungsten “via” that makes electrical connection between adjacent layers of aluminum in a multilayer integrated circuit. From such images, the thickness and grain structure of each layer can be determined. From Zhang (2000), by courtesy of Elsevier Ltd.

The procedures outlined in Fig. 4-20 yield **plan-view** images, in which the sample is viewed perpendicular to its original surface. For some purposes, a **cross-sectional** image is needed, for example to show the growth mechanism of a film. The required specimen is made by using a diamond wheel to cut the film (on its substrate) into several thin strips, which are then turned through 90 degrees about their long axis and glued together by epoxy cement. Dimple grinding followed by ion milling then produces a specimen that is thin at the center, resulting in a TEM image of the substrate and film seen in cross section.

Cross-sectional specimens are invaluable for analyzing problems that arise in the manufacture of integrated circuits on a silicon chip. As device sizes shrink, it becomes necessary to make use of the high spatial resolution of the TEM for this kind of **failure analysis**. The problem of producing a cross section containing a specific component is solved by using a FIB machine, in which  $\text{Ga}^+$  ions are focused (by electrostatic lenses) into a beam as small as 10 nm in diameter. The machine produces a scanned image of the surface of the chip, allowing the ion beam to be precisely positioned and then scanned in a line in order to cut into the silicon on either side of the component. This leaves a slice only 100 nm in thickness, which is then lifted out and viewed in cross section in the TEM, as in Fig. 4-21.

## Chapter 5

# THE SCANNING ELECTRON MICROSCOPE

As we discussed in Chapter 1, the scanning electron microscope (SEM) was invented soon after the TEM but took longer to be developed into a practical tool for scientific research. As happened with the TEM, the spatial resolution of the instrument improved after magnetic lenses were substituted for electrostatic ones and after a stigmator was added to the lens column. Today, scanning electron microscopes outnumber transmission electron microscopes and are used in many fields, including medical and materials research, the semiconductor industry, and forensic-science laboratories.

Figure 1-15 (page 19) shows one example of a commercial high-resolution SEM. Although smaller (and generally less expensive) than a TEM, the SEM incorporates an electron-optical column that operates according to the principles already discussed in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3. Accordingly, our description will be shorter than for the TEM, as we can make use of many of the concepts introduced in these earlier chapters.

### 5.1 Operating Principle of the SEM

The electron source used in the SEM can be a tungsten filament, or else a LaB<sub>6</sub> or Schottky emitter, or a tungsten field-emission tip. Because the maximum accelerating voltage (typically 30 kV) is lower than for a TEM, the electron gun is smaller, requiring less insulation. Axially-symmetric magnetic lenses are used but they are also smaller than those employed in the TEM; for electrons of lower kinetic energy, the polepieces need not generate such a strong magnetic field. There are also *fewer* lenses; image formation uses the scanning principle that was outlined in Chapter 1, and as a result *imaging lenses* are not required.

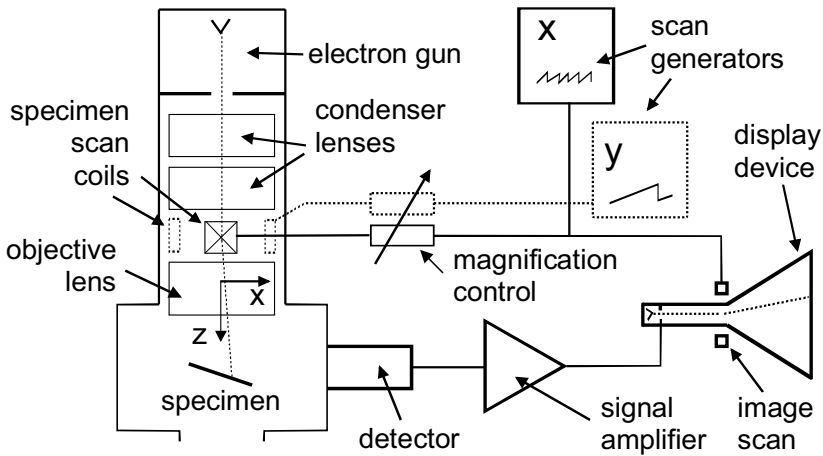


Figure 5-1. Schematic diagram of a scanning electron microscope with a CRT display.

Above the specimen, there are typically two or three lenses, which act somewhat like the condenser lenses of a TEM. But whereas the TEM, if operating in imaging mode, has a beam of diameter  $\approx 1 \mu\text{m}$  or more at the specimen, the incident beam in the SEM (also known as the **electron probe**) needs to be as small as possible: a diameter of 10 nm is typical and 1 nm is possible with a field-emission source. The final lens that forms this very small probe is named the **objective**; its performance (including aberrations) largely determines the spatial resolution of the instrument, as does the objective of a TEM or a light-optical microscope. In fact, the resolution of an SEM can never be better than its incident-probe diameter, as a consequence of the method used to obtain the image.

Whereas the conventional TEM uses a stationary incident beam, the electron probe of an SEM is scanned horizontally across the specimen in two perpendicular ( $x$  and  $y$ ) directions. The  $x$ -scan is relatively fast and is generated by a sawtooth-wave generator operating at a **line** frequency  $f_x$ ; see Fig. 5-2a. This generator supplies scanning current to two coils, connected in series and located on either side of the optic axis, just above the objective lens. The coils generate a magnetic field in the  $y$ -direction, creating a force on an electron (traveling in the  $z$ -direction) that deflects it in the  $x$ -direction; see Fig. 5-1.

The  $y$ -scan is much slower (Fig. 5-2b) and is generated by a second sawtooth-wave generator running at a **frame** frequency  $f_y = f_x/n$  where  $n$  is an integer. The entire procedure is known as  **raster scanning**  and causes the beam to sequentially cover a rectangular area on the specimen (Fig. 5-2d).

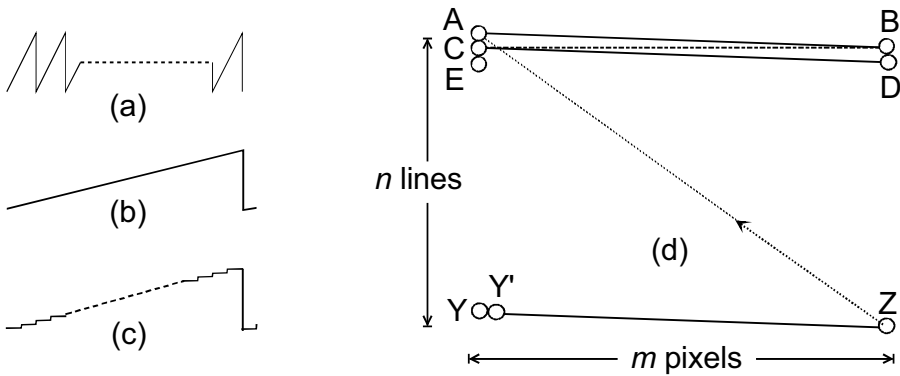


Figure 5-2. (a) Line-scan waveform (scan current versus time), (b) frame-scan waveform, and (c) its digital equivalent. (d) Elements of a single-frame raster scan: AB and YZ are the first and last line scans in the frame, Y and Y' represent adjacent pixels.

During its  $x$ -deflection signal, the electron probe moves in a straight line, from A to B in Fig. 5-2d, forming a single **line scan**. After reaching B, the beam is deflected back along the  $x$ -axis as quickly as possible (the **flyback** portion of the  $x$ -waveform). But because the  $y$ -scan generator has increased its output during the line-scan period, it returns *not* to A but to point C, displaced in the  $y$ -direction. A second line scan takes the probe to point D, at which point it flies back to E and the process is repeated until  $n$  lines have been scanned and the beam arrives at point Z. This entire sequence constitutes a single **frame** of the raster scan. From point Z, the probe quickly returns to A, as a result of the rapid flyback of *both* the line and frame generators, and the next frame is executed. This process may run continuously for many frames, as happens in TV or video technology.

The outputs of the two scan generators are also applied to a display device, such as a TV-type cathode-ray tube (CRT), on which the SEM image will appear. The electron beam in the CRT scans exactly in *synchronism* with the beam in the SEM, so for every point on the specimen (within the raster-scanned area) there is a *equivalent* point on the display screen, displayed at the same instant of time. Maxwell's first rule of imaging is therefore obeyed (although approximately because the electron beams are not points but circles of small diameter). In order to introduce *contrast* into the image, a voltage signal must be applied to the electron gun of the CRT, to vary the brightness of the scanning spot. This voltage is derived from a detector that responds to *some change in the specimen* induced by the SEM incident probe.

In a modern SEM, the scan signals are generated digitally, by computer-controlled circuitry, and the  $x$ - and  $y$ -scan waveforms are actually *staircase*



functions with  $m$  and  $n$  levels respectively; see Fig. 5-2c. This procedure divides the image into a total of  $mn$  picture elements (**pixels**) and the SEM probe remains stationary for a certain dwell time before *jumping* to the next pixel. One advantage of digital scanning is that the SEM computer “knows” the  $(x, y)$  address of each pixel and can record the appropriate image-intensity value (also as a digitized number) in the corresponding computer-memory location. A digital image, in the form of position and intensity information, can therefore be stored in computer memory, on a magnetic or optical disk, or transmitted over data lines such as the Internet.

Also, the modern SEM uses a flat-panel display screen in which there is no internal electron beam. Instead, computer-generated voltages are used to sequentially define the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of a screen pixel and the SEM detector signal is applied electronically to that pixel, to change its brightness. In other respects, the raster-scanning principle is the same as for a CRT display.

Image magnification in the SEM is achieved by making the  $x$ - and  $y$ -scan distances *on the specimen* a small fraction of the size of the displayed image, as by definition the magnification factor  $M$  is given by:

$$M = (\text{scan distance in the image}) / (\text{scan distance on the specimen}) \quad (5.1)$$

It is convenient to keep the image a *fixed* size, just filling the display screen, so increasing the magnification involves *reducing* the  $x$ - and  $y$ -scan currents, each in the same proportion (to avoid image distortion). Consequently, the SEM is actually working hardest (in terms of current drawn from the scan generator) when operated at *low* magnification.

The scanning is sometimes done at video rate (about 60 frames/second) to generate a rapidly-refreshed image that is useful for focusing the specimen or for viewing it at low magnification. At higher magnification, or when making a permanent record of an image, slow scanning (several seconds per frame) is preferred; the additional recording time results in a higher-quality image containing less electronic noise.

The signal that modulates (alters) the image brightness can be derived from any property of the specimen that changes in response to electron bombardment. Most commonly, the emission of **secondary electrons** (atomic electrons ejected from the specimen as a result of inelastic scattering) is used. However, a signal derived from **backscattered electrons** (incident electrons elastically scattered through more than 90 degrees) is also useful. In order to understand these (and other) possibilities, we need to

consider what happens when an electron beam enters a *thick* (often called bulk) specimen.

## 5.2 Penetration of Electrons into a Solid

When accelerated electrons enter a solid, they are scattered both *elastically* (by electrostatic interaction with atomic nuclei) and *inelastically* (by interaction with atomic electrons), as already discussed in Chapter 4. Most of this interaction is “forward” scattering, which implies deflection angles of less than 90°. But a small fraction of the primaries are elastically backscattered ( $\theta > 90^\circ$ ) with only small fractional loss of energy. Due to their high kinetic energy, these backscattered electrons have a reasonable probability of leaving the specimen and re-entering the surrounding vacuum, in which case they can be collected as a backscattered-electron (**BSE**) signal.

Inelastic scattering involves relatively small scattering angles and so contributes little to the backscattered signal. However, it reduces the kinetic energy of the primary electrons until they are eventually brought to rest and absorbed into the solid; in a metal specimen they could become conduction electrons. The depth (below the surface) at which this occurs is called the **penetration depth** or the **electron range**. The volume of sample containing (most of) the scattered electrons is called the **interaction volume** and is often represented as pear-shaped in cross section (Fig. 5-3), because scattering causes the beam to spread laterally as the electrons penetrate the solid and gradually lose energy.

The electron range  $R$  for electrons of incident energy  $E_0$  is given by the following approximate formula (Reimer 1998):

$$\rho R \approx a E_0^b \quad (5.2)$$

where  $b \approx 1.35$  and  $\rho$  is the density of the specimen. If  $E_0$  is given in *keV* in Eq. (5.2),  $a \approx 10 \mu\text{g}/\text{cm}^2$ . Expressing the range as a **mass-thickness**  $\rho R$  makes the coefficient  $a$  roughly independent of atomic number  $Z$ . However, this implies that the distance  $R$  itself decreases with  $Z$ , as the densities of solids tend to increase with atomic number. For carbon ( $Z = 6$ ),  $\rho \approx 2 \text{ g}/\text{cm}^3$  and  $R \approx 1 \mu\text{m}$  for a 10-keV electron. But for gold ( $Z = 79$ ),  $\rho \approx 20 \text{ g}/\text{cm}^3$  and  $R \approx 0.2 \mu\text{m}$  at  $E_0 = 10 \text{ keV}$ . This strong  $Z$ -dependence arises mainly because backscattering depletes the number of electrons moving forward into the solid, the probability of such high-angle elastic scattering being proportional to  $Z^2$ , as seen from Eq. (4.15). The interaction volume is therefore smaller for materials of higher atomic number (Fig. 5-3).

According to Eq. (5.2), the range decreases substantially with decreasing incident energy, not surprising because lower-energy electrons require fewer

inelastic collisions to bring them to rest and also the probability of inelastic scattering is inversely proportional to  $E_0$ . A 1-keV electron penetrates only about 50 nm into carbon and less than 10 nm into gold. The interaction volume therefore becomes very small at low incident energy; see Fig. 5-3.

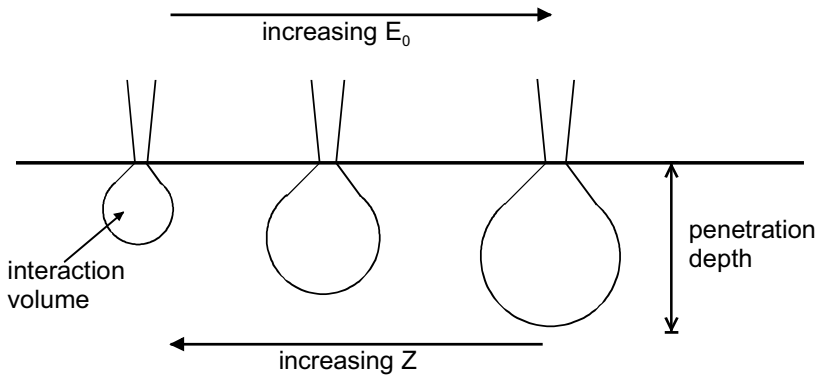


Figure 5-3. Schematic dependence of the interaction volume and penetration depth as a function of incident energy  $E_0$  and atomic number  $Z$  of the incident (primary) electrons.

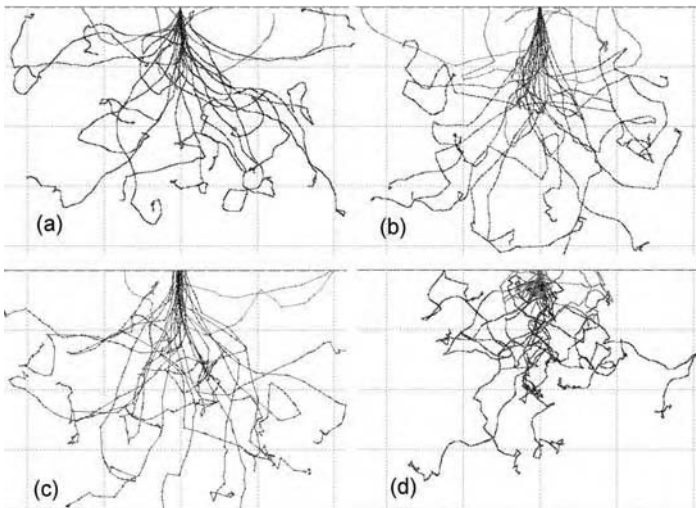


Figure 5-4. Penetration of (a) 30-keV, (b) 10-keV and (c) 3-keV electrons into aluminum ( $Z = 13$ ) and (d) 30-keV electrons into gold ( $Z = 79$ ). Note that the dimensional scales are different: the maximum penetration is about  $6.4 \mu\text{m}$ ,  $0.8 \mu\text{m}$ , and  $0.12 \mu\text{m}$  in (a), (b), and (c), and  $1.2 \mu\text{m}$  in (d). These Monte Carlo simulations were carried out using the CASINO program (Gauvin et al., 2001) with 25 primary electrons and an incident-beam diameter equal to 10 nm in each case.

Penetration depth and interaction volume are macroscopic quantities, averaged over a large number of electrons, but the behavior of an *individual* electron is highly variable. In other words, scattering is a statistical process. It can be simulated in a computer by running a Monte Carlo program that contains a random-number generator and information about the angular distributions of elastic and inelastic scattering. Figure 5-4 shows the trajectories of 25 primary electrons entering both aluminum and gold. Sudden changes in direction represent the elastic or inelastic scattering. Although the behavior of each electron is different, the very dissimilar length scales needed to represent the different values of  $E_0$  and  $Z$  in Fig. 5-4 are a further illustration of the overall trends represented by Eq. (5.2).

### 5.3 Secondary-Electron Images

From the principle of conservation of energy, we know that any energy *lost* by a primary electron will appear as a *gain* in energy of the atomic electrons that are responsible for the inelastic scattering. If these are the outer-shell (valence or conduction) electrons, weakly bound (electrostatically) to an atomic nucleus, only a small part of this acquired energy will be used up as potential energy, to release them from the confines of a particular atom. The remainder will be retained as kinetic energy, allowing the escaping electrons to travel through the solid as secondary electrons (abbreviated to **SE** or **secondaries**). As moving charged particles, the secondaries themselves will interact with other atomic electrons and be scattered inelastically, gradually losing their kinetic energy. In fact, most SEs start with a kinetic energy of less than 100 eV and, because the probability of inelastic scattering depends *inversely* on kinetic energy as in Eq. (4.16), the average distance that a secondary travels in the solid is very small, typically one or two nm.

As a result, most secondaries are brought to rest *within* the interaction volume. But those created close to the surface may escape into the vacuum, especially if they are initially traveling *toward* the surface. On average, the *escaping* secondaries are generated only within very small depth ( $< 2$  nm) below the surface, called the **escape depth**. Because the SE signal used in the SEM is derived from secondaries that escape into the vacuum, the SE image is a property of the *surface structure* (topography) of the specimen rather than any underlying structure; the image is said to display **topographical contrast**.

The average number of *escaping* secondaries *per primary electron* is called the **secondary-electron yield**,  $\delta$ , and is typically in the range from 0.1 to 10; the exact value depends on the chemical composition of the specimen

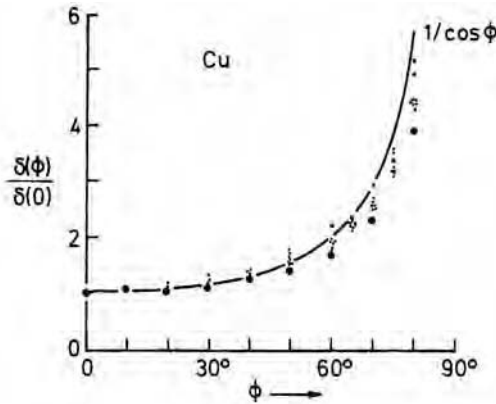


Figure 5-5. Dependence of SE yield on the angle of tilt  $\phi$  of the specimen, measured between a plane perpendicular to its surface and the primary-electron beam ( $\phi = 0$  corresponds to normal incidence). Data points represent experimental measurements and Monte Carlo predictions for copper; the curve represents a  $1/\cos\phi$  function. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.

(close to the surface) and on the primary-electron energy  $E_0$ . For a given specimen,  $\delta$  decreases with increasing  $E_0$  because higher-energy primaries undergo less inelastic scattering (per unit distance traveled) and so there will be fewer secondaries generated *within the escape depth*.

As Fig. 5-5 indicates, the secondary-electron yield also depends on the angle between the incoming primary electron and the surface. The yield is lowest for normal (perpendicular) incidence and increases with increasing angle between the primary beam and the surface-normal. The reason is illustrated in Fig. 5-6a, which shows a focused nearly-parallel beam of primary electrons (diameter  $d$ ) incident at two locations on a specimen, where the surface is normal (at A) and inclined (at B) to the incident beam. The region from which secondary electrons can escape is such that all points within it lie within the escape depth  $\lambda$  of the surface. For normal incidence, this escape region is a cylinder of radius  $d/2$ , height  $\lambda$ , and volume  $V(0) = (\pi/4)d^2\lambda$ . For the inclined surface, the escape region is a slanted cylinder with height  $\lambda$  (perpendicular to the surface) and base of cross-sectional area  $(\pi/4)(d/\cos\phi)^2$ , giving escape volume  $V(\phi) = \pi(d/2)^2(\lambda/\cos\phi) = V(0)/\cos\phi$ . Because the SE yield is proportional to the number of SE generated within the escape region,  $\delta$  is proportional to the escape volume, resulting in:

$$\delta(\phi) = \delta(0)/\cos\phi \quad (5.3)$$

Measurements of  $\delta(\phi)$  support this inverse-cosine formula; see Fig. 5-5.

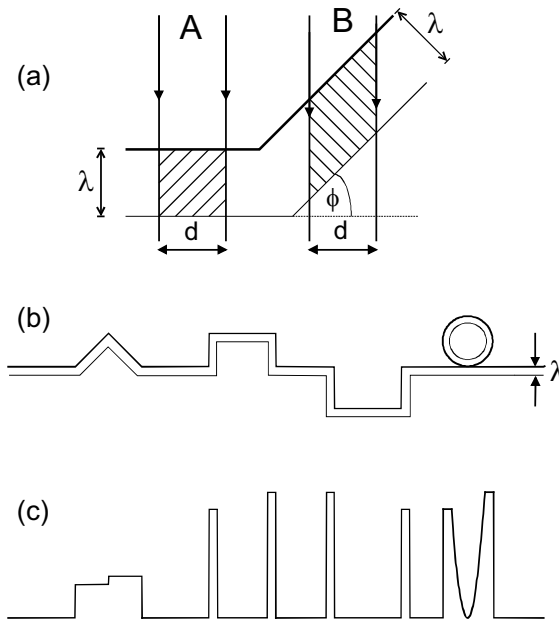


Figure 5-6. (a) SEM incident beam that is normal to a specimen surface (at A) and inclined to the surface (at B). The volume from which secondaries can escape is proportional to the shaded cross-sectional area, which is  $\lambda d$  for case A and  $\lambda d/\cos\phi$  for a tilted surface (case B). (b) Cross-sectional diagram of a specimen surface that contains triangular and square protrusions, a square-shaped trough or well, and a spherical particle;  $\lambda$  is the SE escape depth. (c) Corresponding secondary-electron signal (from a line-scan along the surface), assuming a SE detector that is located to the right of the specimen.

In qualitative terms, non-normal irradiation of a surface generates more SE that lie within a *perpendicular* distance  $\lambda$  of the surface and can therefore escape into the vacuum. For a surface with topographical (height) variations (Fig. 5-6b), this orientation dependence of  $\delta$  results in protruding or recessed features appearing *bright in outline* in the SE image (Figs. 5-6c and 5-7a), similar to thickness-gradient contrast from a TEM replica.

In practice, there is usually some asymmetry due to the fact that the SE detector is located to one side of the column (Fig. 5-1) rather than directly above. Surface features that are tilted *toward* the detector appear especially bright because electrons emitted from these regions have a greater probability of reaching the detector; see Fig. 5-7a. This fact can be used to *distinguish* raised features and depressions in the surface of the specimen, as illustrated in Fig. 5-6c. As a result, the SE image has a three-dimensional appearance, similar to that of a rough surface obliquely illuminated by light, which makes the topographical contrast relatively easy to interpret; see also Fig. 5-9a.

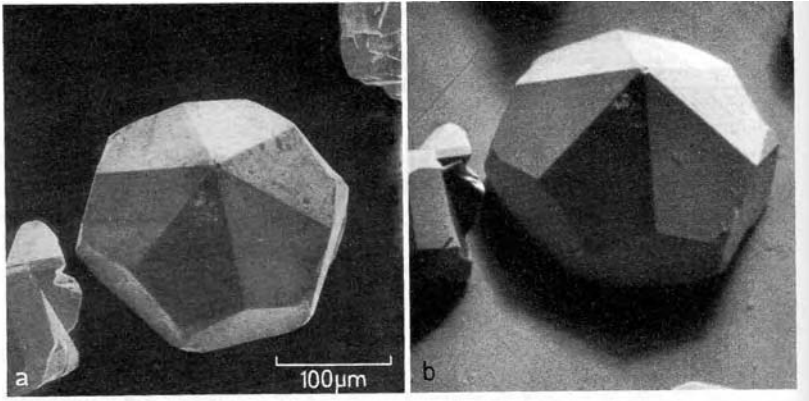


Figure 5-7. (a) Secondary-electron image of a small crystal; the side-mounted Everhart-Thornley detector is located toward the top of the image. (b) Backscattered-electron image recorded by the same side-mounted detector, which also shows topographical contrast and shadowing effects. Such contrast is much weaker for a BSE detector mounted directly above the specimen. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.

Taking advantage of the orientation dependence of  $\delta$ , the *whole sample* is often tilted away from a horizontal plane and toward the detector, as shown in Fig. 5-1. This increases the overall SE signal, averaged over all regions of the sample, while preserving the topographic contrast due to *differences* in surface orientation.

To further increase the SE signal, a positively-biased electrode is used to attract the secondary electrons away from the specimen. This electrode could be a simple metal plate that absorbs the electrons, generating a small current that could be amplified and used to generate a SE image. However, the resulting SE signal would be weak and noisy. The amount of electronic noise could be reduced by limiting the frequency response (bandwidth) of the amplifier, but the amplified signal might not follow the fast changes in input signal that occur when the electron probe is scanned rapidly over a non-uniform specimen.

A stronger signal is obtained from an Everhart-Thornley detector, named after the scientists who first applied this design to the SEM. The secondaries are first attracted toward a wire-mesh electrode biased positively by a few hundred volts; see Fig. 5-8. Most of the electrons pass *through* the grid and are *accelerated* further toward a **scintillator** that is biased positive  $V_s$  by several *thousand* volts. The scintillator can be a layer of phosphor (similar to the coating on a TEM screen) on the end of a glass rod, or a light-emitting plastic or a garnet (oxide) material, each made conducting by a thin metallic surface coating. The scintillator has the property (**cathodoluminescence**) of

emitting visible-light photons when bombarded by charged particles such as electrons. The number of photons generated by each electron depends on its kinetic energy  $E_k (= eV_s)$  and is of the order 100 for  $V_s \approx 10$  kV. The scintillator material has a high refractive index, so advantage can be taken of total internal reflection to guide the photons through a light pipe (a solid plastic or glass rod passing through a sealed port in the specimen chamber) to a **photomultiplier tube** (PMT) located outside the vacuum.

The PMT is a highly sensitive detector of visible (or ultraviolet) photons and consists of a sealed glass tube containing a hard (good-quality) vacuum. The light-entrance surface is coated internally with a thin layer of a material with low work function, which acts as a **photocathode**. When photons are absorbed within the photocathode, they supply sufficient energy to liberate conduction or valence electrons, which may escape into the PMT vacuum as *photoelectrons*. These low-energy electrons are accelerated toward the first of a series of **dynode** electrodes, each biased positive with respect to the photocathode.

At the first dynode, biased at 100 – 200 V, the accelerated photoelectrons generate *secondary* electrons within the escape depth, just like primary electrons striking an SEM specimen. The dynodes are coated with a material with high SE yield ( $\delta$ ) so that at least two (sometimes as many as ten) secondary electrons are emitted for each photoelectron. The secondaries are accelerated toward a *second* dynode, biased at least 100 V positive with respect to the first, where each secondary produces at least two *new* secondaries. This process is repeated at each of the  $n$  (typically eight) dynodes, resulting in a current amplification factor of  $(\delta)^n$ , typically  $\approx 10^6$  for  $n = 8$  and  $\delta \approx 4$ .

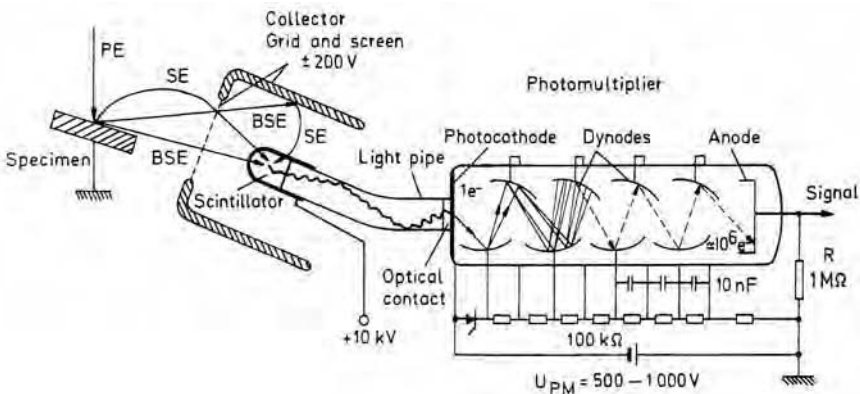


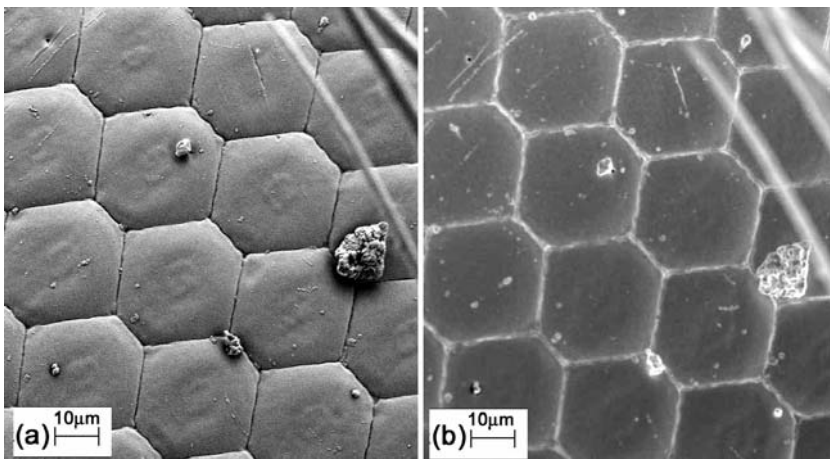
Figure 5-8. A typical scintillator/PMT (Everhart-Thornley) detector, employed for secondary-electron imaging in the SEM. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.



Because each secondary produced at the SEM specimen generated about 100 photoelectrons, the overall amplification (gain) of the PMT/scintillator combination can be as high as  $10^8$ , depending on how much accelerating voltage is applied to the dynodes. Although this conversion of SEM secondaries into photons, then into photoelectrons and finally back into secondary electrons seems complicated, it is justified by the fact that the detector provides high amplification with relatively little added noise.

In some high-resolution SEMs, the objective lens has a small focal length (a few millimeters) and the specimen is placed very close to it, within the magnetic field of the lens (immersion-lens configuration). Secondary electrons emitted close to the optic axis follow helical trajectories, spiraling around the magnetic-field lines and emerging *above* the objective lens, where they are attracted toward a positively-biased detector. Because the signal from such an **in-lens detector** (or through-the-lens detector) corresponds to secondaries emitted almost perpendicular to the specimen surface, positive and negative values of  $\phi$  (Fig. 5-6a) provide equal signal. Consequently, the SE image shows no directional or shadowing effects, as illustrated in Fig. 5-9b.

In-lens detection is often combined with energy filtering of the secondary electrons that form the image. For example, a Wien-filter arrangement (Section 7.3) can be used to select higher-energy secondaries, which consist mainly of the higher-resolution SE1 component (Section 5.6).



*Figure 5-9.* Compound eye of an insect, coated with gold to make the specimen conducting. (a) SE image recorded by a side-mounted detector (located toward the top of the page) and showing a strong directional effect, including dark shadows visible below each dust particle. (b) SE image recorded by an in-lens detector, showing topographical contrast but very little directional or shadowing effect. Courtesy of Peng Li, University of Alberta.

## 5.4 Backscattered-Electron Images

A backscattered electron (BSE) is a primary electron that has been ejected from a solid by scattering through an angle greater than 90 degrees. Such deflection could occur as a result of several collisions, some or all of which might involve a scattering angle of *less* than 90 degrees; however, a *single* elastic event with  $\theta > 90$  degrees is quite probable. Because the elastic scattering involves only a *small* energy exchange, most BSEs escape from the sample with energies not too far below the primary-beam energy; see Fig. 5-10. The secondary and backscattered electrons can therefore be distinguished on the basis of their kinetic energy.

Because the cross section for high-angle elastic scattering is proportional to  $Z^2$ , we might expect to obtain strong *atomic-number* contrast by using backscattered electrons as the signal used to modulate the SEM-image intensity. In practice, the **backscattering coefficient**  $\eta$  (the fraction of primary electrons that escape as BSE) *does* increase with atomic number, (almost linearly for low  $Z$ ), and BSE images can show contrast due to variations in chemical composition of a specimen, whereas SE images reflect mainly its surface topography.

Another difference between the two kinds of image is the *depth* from which the information originates. In the case of a BSE image, the signal comes from a depth of up to about *half* the penetration depth (after being generated, each BSE must have enough energy to get out of the solid). For primary energies above 3 kV, this means some *tens or hundreds* of nanometers rather than the much smaller SE escape depth ( $\approx 1$  nm).

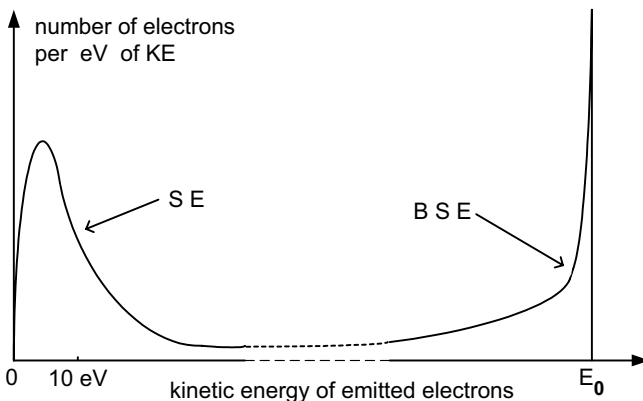


Figure 5-10. Number of electrons emitted from the SEM specimen as a function of their kinetic energy, illustrating the conventional classification into secondary and backscattered components.

Backscattered electrons can be detected by a scintillator/PMT detector if the bias on the first grid is made negative, to *repel* secondary electrons. The BSEs are recorded if they impinge directly on the scintillator (causing light emission) or if they strike a surface *beyond* the grid and create secondaries that are then accelerated to the scintillator (see Fig. 5-8). The BSEs travel in almost a straight line, their high energy making them relatively unresponsive to electrostatic fields. Consequently, more of them reach the side-mounted detector if they are emitted from a surface inclined toward it, giving some topographical contrast; as in Fig. 5-7b. However, backscattered electrons are emitted over a *broad* angular range, and only those emitted within a small solid angle (defined by the collector diameter) reach the scintillator. The resulting signal is weak and provides a noisy image, so a more efficient form of detector is desirable.

In the so-called **Robinson detector**, an annular (ring-shaped) scintillator is mounted immediately below the objective lens and just above the specimen; see Fig. 5-11a. The scintillator subtends a large solid angle and collects a substantial fraction of the backscattered electrons. Light is channeled (by internal reflection) through a light pipe and into a PMT, as in the case of the Everhart-Thornley detector.

An alternative backscattered-electron detector is shown in Fig. 5-11b. This **solid-state detector** consists of a large area (several  $\text{cm}^2$ ) silicon diode,

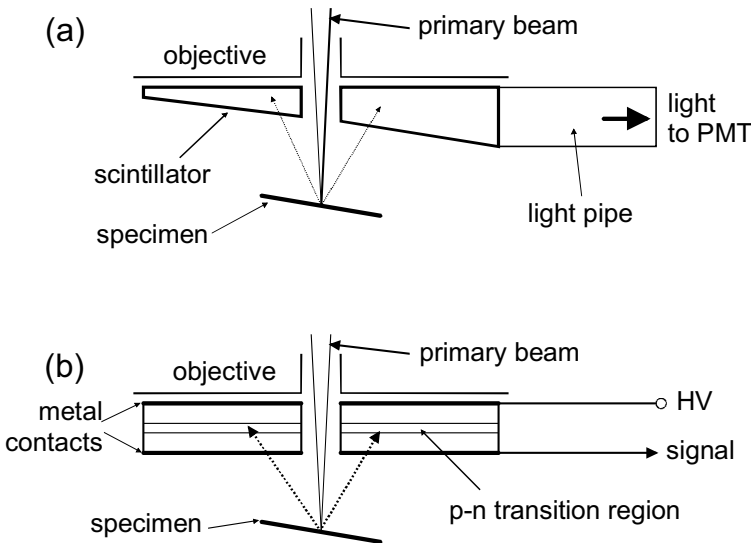


Figure 5-11. Backscattered-electron detectors installed below the objective lens of an SEM: (a) annular-scintillator/PMT (Robinson) design and (b) solid-state (semiconductor) detector.

mounted just below the objective lens. Impurity atoms (arsenic, phosphorus) are added to the silicon to make it electrically conducting. The diode consists of an n-type layer, in which conduction is by electrons, and a p-type layer, in which conduction is by holes (absence of electrons in an otherwise full valence band). At the interface between the p- and n-layers lies a transition region, in which current carriers (electrons and holes) are absent because they have diffused across the interface. A voltage applied between the n- and p-regions (via metal surface electrodes) will therefore create a high internal electric field across this high-resistivity transition region. If a backscattered electron arrives at the detector and penetrates to the transition region, its remaining kinetic energy is used to excite electrons from the valence to the conduction band, creating mobile electrons and holes. These free carriers move under the influence of the internal field, causing a current pulse to flow between the electrodes and in an external circuit. BSE arrival can therefore be measured by counting current pulses or by measuring the average current, which is proportional to the number of backscattered electrons arriving per second. Because secondary electrons do not have enough energy to reach the transition region, they do *not* contribute to the signal provided by the solid-state detector.

Because the Robinson and solid-state detectors are mounted directly above the specimen, their BSE signal contains little topographic contrast but does show “material contrast” due to differences in local atomic number in the near-surface region of the specimen. The orientation of crystal planes (relative to the incident beam) also affects the electron penetration into the specimen, through diffraction effects, which gives rise to some “orientation contrast” between the different grains in a polycrystalline specimen.

## 5.5 Other SEM Imaging Modes

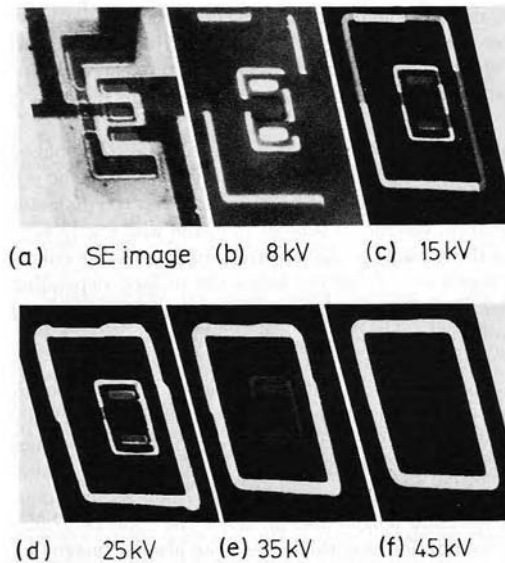
Although SE and BSE images suffice for most SEM applications, some specimens benefit from the ability to use other types of signal to modulate the image intensity, as we now illustrate with several examples.

A **specimen-current image** is obtained by using a specimen holder that is insulated from ground and connected to the input terminal of a sensitive current amplifier. Conservation of charge implies that the specimen current  $I_s$  flowing to ground (through the amplifier) must be equal to the primary-beam current  $I_p$  *minus* the rate of loss of electrons from secondary emission and backscattering:

$$I_s = I_p - I_{\text{BSE}} - I_{\text{SE}} = I_p (1 - \eta - \delta) \quad (5.4)$$

Whereas  $I_p$  remains constant,  $I_{BSE}$  and  $I_{SE}$  vary, due to variations in  $\eta$  and  $\delta$ , as the probe scans across the specimen. Therefore the specimen-current image contains a mixture of  $Z$ -contrast and topographical information. To reduce the noise level of the image, the current amplifier must be limited in bandwidth (frequency range), requiring that the specimen be scanned slowly, with a frame time of many seconds.

Electron-beam induced conductivity (**EBIC**) occurs when the primary-electron probe passes near a p-n junction in a semiconductor specimen such as a silicon integrated circuit (IC) containing diodes and transistors. Additional electrons and holes are created, as in the case of a solid-state detector responding to backscattered electrons, resulting in current flow between two electrodes attached to the specimen surface. If this current is used as the signal applied to the image display, the junction regions show up bright in the EBIC image. The p-n junctions in ICs are buried below the surface, but provided they lie within the penetration depth of the primary electrons, an EBIC signal will be generated. It is even possible to use the dependence of penetration depth on primary energy  $E_0$  to image junctions at different depths; see Fig. 5-12.



*Figure 5-12.* Imaging of perpendicular p-n junctions in a MOS field-effect transistor (MOSFET). (a) SE image, (b – f) EBIC images for increasing primary-electron energy  $E_0$  and therefore increasing penetration depth. Reproduced from Reimer (1998), courtesy of H. Raith and Springer-Verlag.

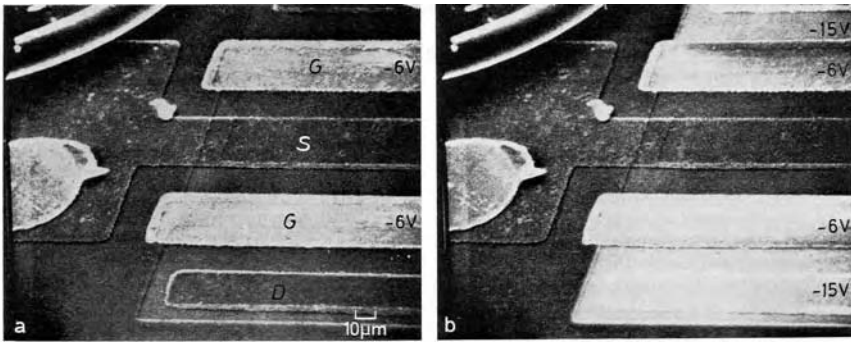


Figure 5-13. SEM voltage-contrast image of an MOS field-effect transistor with (a) the gate electrode G at  $-6$  V, source S and drain D electrodes grounded; (b) gate at  $-6$  V, source and drain at  $-15$  V. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.

**Voltage contrast** arises when voltages are applied to surface regions of a specimen, usually a semiconductor IC chip. The secondary-electron yield is reduced in regions that are biased positive, as lower-energy secondaries are attracted *back* to the specimen. Conversely, negative regions exhibit a higher SE yield (see Fig. 5-13) because secondaries are repelled and have a higher probability of reaching the detector. The voltage-contrast image is useful for checking whether *supply* voltages applied to an integrated circuit are reaching the appropriate locations. It can also be used to test whether a circuit is operating correctly, with *signal* voltages appearing in the right sequence. Although most ICs (such as microprocessors) operate at far too high a frequency for their voltage cycles to be observed directly, this sequence can be slowed down and viewed in a TV-rate SEM image by use of a **stroboscopic** technique. By applying a square-wave current to deflection coils installed in the SEM column, the electron beam can be periodically deflected and intercepted by a suitably-placed aperture. If this **chopping** of the beam is performed at a frequency that is slightly different from the operational frequency of the IC, the voltage cycle appears in the SE image at the *beat* frequency (the *difference* between the chopping and IC frequencies), which could be as low as one cycle per second.

As an alternative to collecting electrons to form an SEM image, it is sometimes possible to detect photons emitted from the specimen. As discussed in connection with a scintillator detector, some materials emit visible light in response to bombardment by electrons, the process known as **cathodoluminescence** (CL). In addition to phosphors (see Fig. 5-14), certain semiconductors fall into this category and may emit light uniformly *except* in regions containing crystal defects. In such specimens, CL images have been used to reveal the presence of dislocations, which appear as dark lines.

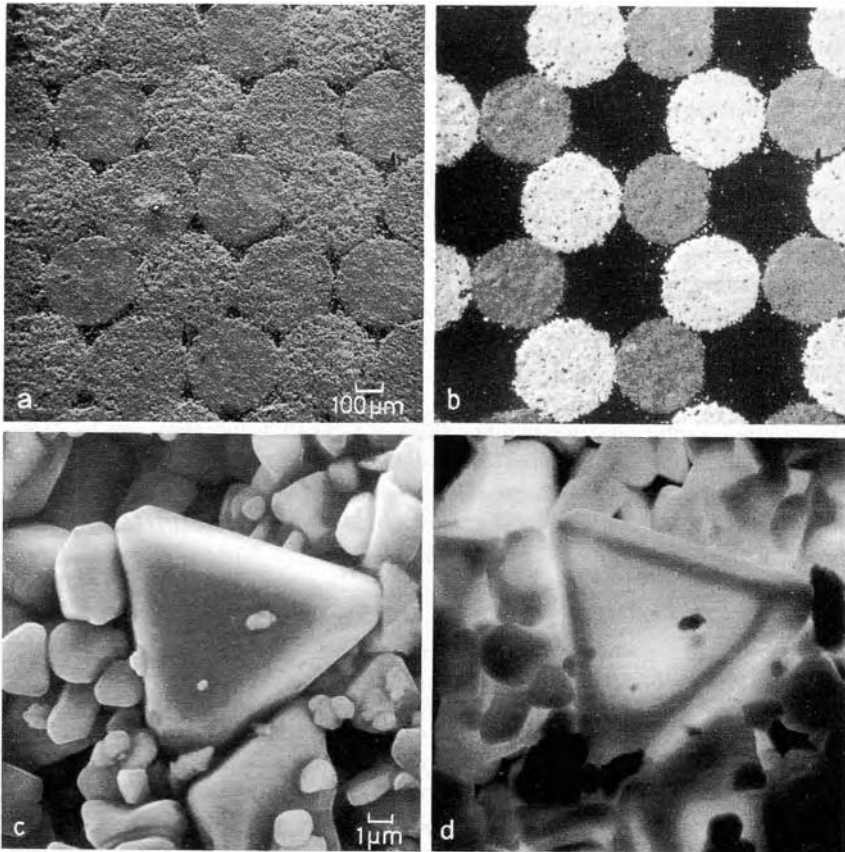


Figure 5-14. Red, green and blue phosphor dots in a color-TV screen, imaged using secondary electrons (on the left) and in CL mode (on the right) without wavelength filtering. The lower images show the individual grains of light-emitting phosphor imaged at higher magnification. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of J. Hersener, Th. Ricker, and Springer-Verlag.

The light can be detected by a photomultiplier tube, sometimes preceded by a color filter or a wavelength-dispersive device (glass prism or diffraction grating) so that a limited range of photon wavelengths are recorded. Cathodoluminescence is more efficient at low temperatures, so the specimen is often cooled to below 20 K, using liquid helium as the refrigerant.

Visible light is emitted when a primary electron, undergoing an inelastic collision, transfers a few eV of energy to an outer-shell (valence) electron, which then emits a photon while returning to its lowest-energy state. If the primary electron collides with an *inner-shell* electron, more energy must be transferred to excite the atomic electron to a vacant energy level (an outer orbit or orbital) and a photon of higher energy (hundreds or thousands of eV)

may be emitted as a **characteristic x-ray photon**. The x-ray energy can be measured and used to identify the atomic number of the participating atom, as discussed in Chapter 6. If the characteristic x-ray signal is used to control the scanned-image intensity, the result is an **elemental map** showing the distribution of a particular chemical element within the SEM specimen.

## 5.6 SEM Operating Conditions

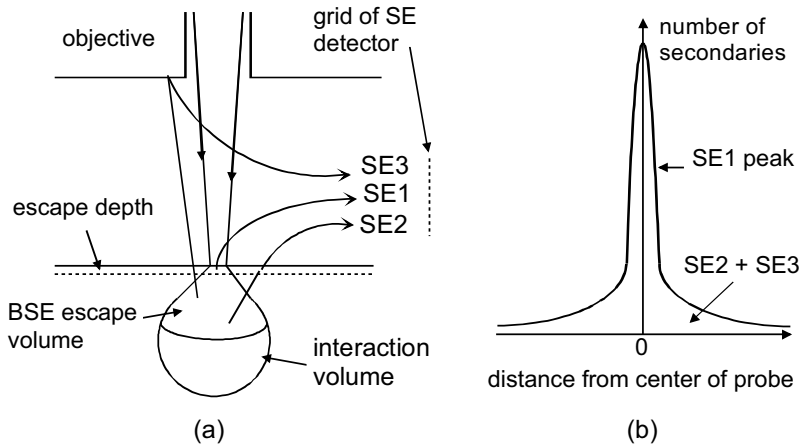
The SEM operator is able to control several parameters of the SEM, such as the electron-accelerating voltage, the distance of the specimen below the objective lens, known as the **working distance** (WD), and sometimes the diameter of the aperture used in the objective lens to control spherical aberration. The choice of these variables in turn influences the *performance* obtained from the SEM.

The accelerating voltage determines the kinetic energy  $E_0$  of the primary electrons, their penetration depth, and therefore the *information depth* of the BSE image. As we have seen, secondary electrons are generated within a very shallow escape depth below the specimen surface, therefore the SE image might be expected to be independent of the choice of  $E_0$ . However, only *part* of the SE signal (the so-called SE1 component) comes from the generation of secondaries by primary electrons close to the surface. Other components (named SE2 and SE3, respectively) arise from the secondaries generated by *backscattered* electrons, as they exit the specimen, and from backscattered electrons that strike an internal surface of the specimen chamber; see Fig. 5-15a. As a result of these SE2 and SE3 components, secondary-electron images can show contrast from structure present well *below* the surface (but within the primary-electron penetration depth), and this structure results from changes in backscattering coefficient, for example due to local differences in atomic number. Such effects are more prominent if the primary-electron penetration depth is large, in other words at a higher accelerating voltage, making the sample appear more “transparent” in the SE image; see Fig. 5-16. Conversely, if the accelerating voltage is reduced below 1 kV, the penetration depth becomes very small (even compared to the secondary-electron escape depth) and only *surface features* are seen in the SE and BSE images.

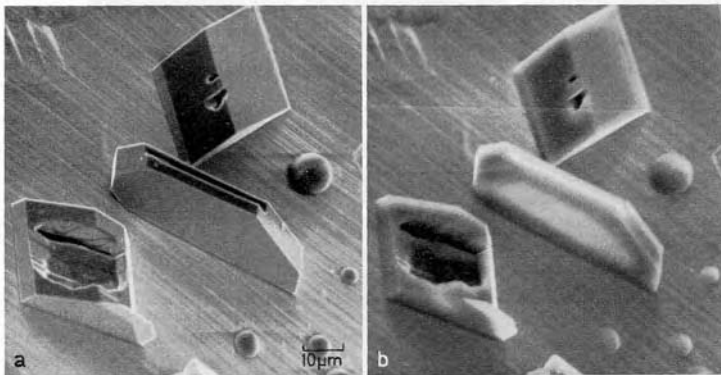
Because the primary beam spreads laterally as it penetrates the specimen and because backscattering occurs over a broad angular range, some SE2 electrons are generated relatively far from the entrance of the incident probe and reflect the properties of a large part of the primary-electron interaction volume. The SE3 component also depends on the amount of backscattering from this relatively large volume. In consequence, the spatial resolution of



the SE2 and SE3 components is substantially worse than for the SE1 component; the SE2 and SE3 electrons contribute a *tail* or *skirt* to the **image-resolution function**; see Fig. 5-15b. Although this fact complicates the definition of spatial resolution, the existence of a *sharp central peak* in the resolution function ensures that *some* high-resolution information will be present in a secondary-electron image.



*Figure 5-15.* (a) Generation of SE1 and SE2 electrons in a specimen, by primary electrons and by backscattered electrons, respectively. SE3 electrons are generated outside the specimen when a BSE strikes an internal SEM component, in this case the bottom of the objective lens. (b) Secondary-image resolution function, showing the relative contributions from secondaries generated at different distances from the center of the electron probe.



*Figure 5-16.* SE images of tridymite crystals and halite spheres on a gold surface, recorded with an SEM accelerating voltage of (a) 10 kV and (b) 30 kV. Note the higher transparency at higher incident energy. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of R. Blaschke and Springer-Verlag.

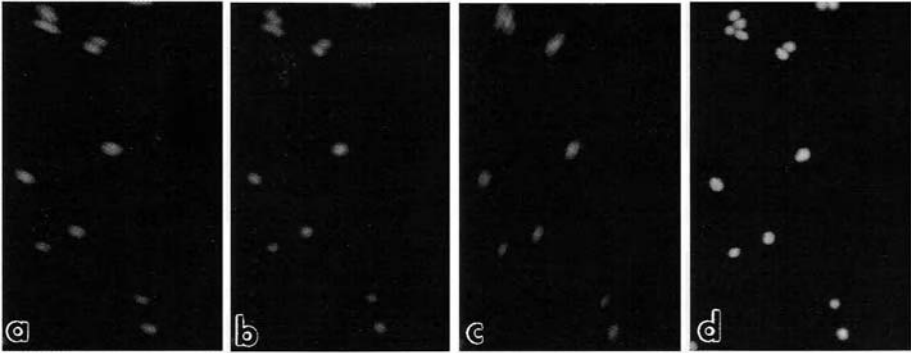


Figure 5-17. (a – c) Astigmatic SE image showing the appearance of small particles as the objective current is changed slightly; in (b) the focus is correct, but the resolution is less than optimum. (d) Correctly focused image after astigmatism correction.

Because the incident beam spreads out very little within the SE1 escape depth, the width of this central peak (Fig. 5-15b) is approximately equal to the diameter  $d$  of the electron probe, which depends on the electron optics of the SEM column. To achieve high demagnification of the electron source, the objective lens is *strongly excited*, with a focal length below 2 cm. This in turn implies small  $C_s$  and  $C_c$  (see Chapter 2), which reduces broadening of the probe by spherical and chromatic aberration. Because of the high demagnification, the image distance of the objective is approximately equal to its focal length (see Section 3.5); in other words, the working distance needs to be small to achieve the best SEM resolution. The smallest available values of  $d$  (below 1 nm) are achieved by employing a *field-emission* source, which provides an effective source diameter of only 10 nm (see Table 3-1), and a working distance of only a few millimeters.

Of course, good image resolution is obtained only if the SEM is properly *focused*, which is done by carefully adjusting the objective-lens current. Small particles on the specimen offer a convenient feature for focusing; the objective lens current is adjusted until their image is as small and sharp as possible. Astigmatism of the SEM lenses can be corrected at the same time; the two stigmator controls are adjusted so that there is no streaking of image features as the image goes through focus (see Fig. 5-17), similar to the commonly-used TEM procedure. In the SEM, zero astigmatism corresponds to a round (rather than elliptical) electron probe, equivalent to an axially-symmetric resolution function.

As shown in Fig. 5-18, the SEM not only has better resolution than a light microscope but also a greater **depth of field**. The latter can be defined as the change  $\Delta v$  in specimen height (or working distance) that produces a

just-observable loss ( $\Delta r$ ) in image resolution. As seen from Fig. 5-19b,  $\Delta r \approx \alpha/\Delta v$  where  $\alpha$  is the convergence semi-angle of the probe. Taking  $\Delta r$  as equal to the image resolution, so that the latter is degraded by a factor  $\approx \sqrt{2}$  by the incorrect focus (as discussed for the TEM in Section 3.7) and taking this resolution as equal to the probe diameter (assuming SE imaging),

$$\Delta v \approx \Delta r / \alpha \approx d / \alpha \quad (5.5)$$

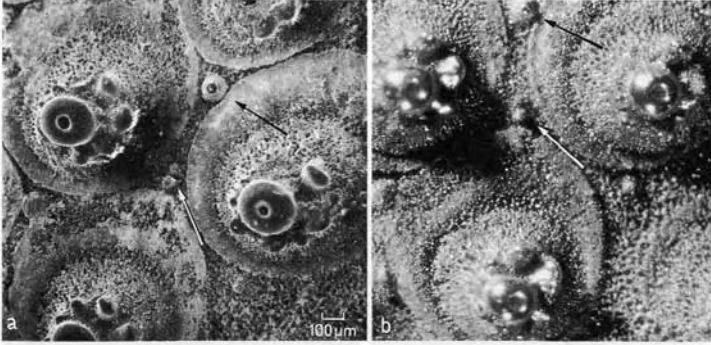


Figure 5-18. (a) Low-magnification SEM image of a sea-urchin specimen, in which specimen features at different height are all approximately in focus. (b) Light-microscope of the same area, in which only one plane is in focus, other features (such as those indicated by arrows) appearing blurred. From Reimer (1998), courtesy of Springer-Verlag.

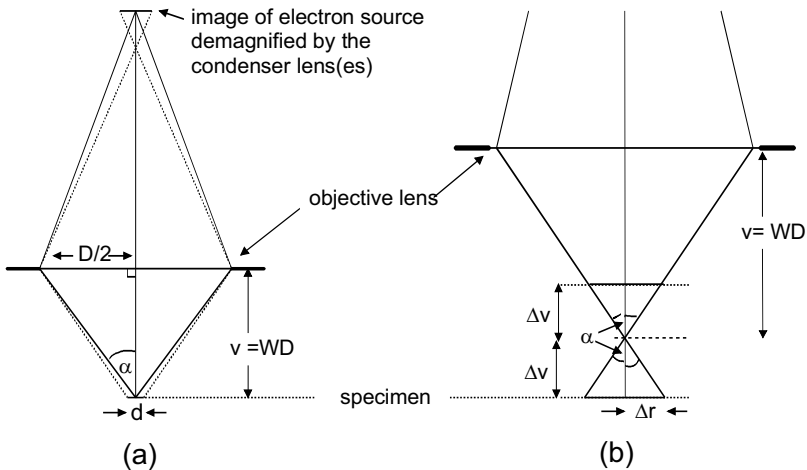


Figure 5-19. (a) The formation of a focused probe of diameter  $d$  by the SEM objective lens. (b) Increase  $\Delta r$  in electron-probe radius for a plane located a distance  $\Delta v$  above or below the plane of focus.

The large SEM depth of field is seen to be a direct result of the relatively small convergence angle  $\alpha$  of the electron probe, which in turn is dictated by the need to limit probe broadening due to spherical and chromatic aberration. As shown in Fig. 5-19a,

$$\alpha \approx D/(2v) \quad (5.6)$$

According to Eqs. (5.5) and (5.6), the depth of field  $\Delta v$  can be increased by increasing  $v$  or reducing  $D$ , although in either case there may be some loss of resolution because of increased diffraction effects (see page 4). Most SEMs allow the working distance to be changed, by height adjustment of the specimen relative to the lens column. Some microscopes also provide a choice of objective diaphragm, with apertures of more than one diameter.

Because of the large depth of field, the SEM specimen can be tilted away from the horizontal and toward the SE detector (to increase SE yield) without too much loss of resolution away from the center of the image. Even so, this effect can be reduced to zero (in principle) by a technique called **dynamic focusing**. It involves applying the  $x$ - and/or  $y$ -scan signal (with an appropriate amplitude, which depends on the angle of tilt) to the objective-current power supply, in order to ensure that the specimen surface remains in focus at all times during the scan. This procedure can be regarded as an adaptation of Maxwell's third rule of focusing (see Chapter 2) to deal with a non-perpendicular image plane. No similar option is available in the TEM, where the post-specimen lenses image all object points simultaneously.

## 5.7 SEM Specimen Preparation

One major advantage of the SEM (in comparison to a TEM) is the ease of specimen preparation, a result of the fact that the specimen does not have to be made thin. In fact, many conducting specimens require no special preparation before examination in the SEM. On the other hand, specimens of insulating materials do not provide a path to ground for the specimen current  $I_s$  and may undergo electrostatic charging when exposed to the electron probe. As is evident from Eq. (5.4), this current can be of *either sign*, depending on the values of the backscattering coefficient  $\eta$  and secondary-electron yield  $\delta$ . Therefore, the local charge on the specimen can be positive or negative. Negative charge presents a more serious problem, as it repels the incident electrons and deflects the scanning probe, resulting in image distortion or fluctuations in image intensity.

One solution to the charging problem is to coat the surface of the SEM specimen with a thin film of metal or conducting carbon. This is done in vacuum, using the evaporation or sublimation technique already discussed in

Section 4-10. Films of thickness 10 – 20 nm conduct sufficiently to prevent charging of most specimens. Because this thickness is greater than the SE escape depth, the SE signal comes from the *coating* rather than from the specimen material. However, the external contours of a very thin film closely follow those of the specimen, providing the possibility of a faithful topographical image. Gold and chromium are common coating materials. Evaporated carbon is also used; it has a low SE yield but an extremely small grain size so that *granularity* of the coating does not appear (as an artifact) in a high-magnification SE image, masking real specimen features.

Where coating is undesirable or difficult (for example, a specimen with very rough surfaces), specimen charging can often be avoided by carefully choosing the SEM accelerating voltage. This option arises because the backscattering coefficient  $\eta$  and secondary-electron yield  $\delta$  depend on the primary-electron energy  $E_0$ . At high  $E_0$ , the penetration depth is large and only a small fraction of the secondary electrons generated in the specimen can escape into the vacuum. In addition, many of the backscattered electrons are generated deep within the specimen and do not have enough energy to escape, so  $\eta$  will be low. A low total yield ( $\eta + \delta$ ) means that the specimen charges negatively; according to Eq. (5.4). As  $E_0$  is reduced,  $\delta$  increases and the specimen current  $I_s$  required to maintain charge neutrality eventually falls to zero at some incident energy  $E_2$  corresponding to  $(\eta + \delta) = 1$ . Further reduction in  $E_0$  could result in a positive charge but this would attract secondaries back to the specimen, neutralizing the charge. So in practice, positive charging is less of a problem.

For an incident energy below some value  $E_1$ , the total yield falls below one because now the primary electrons do not have enough energy to create secondaries. Because by definition  $\eta < 1$ , Eq. (5.4) indicates that negative charging will again occur. But for  $E_1 < E_0 < E_2$ , negative charging is absent even for an insulating specimen, as shown in Fig. 5-20.

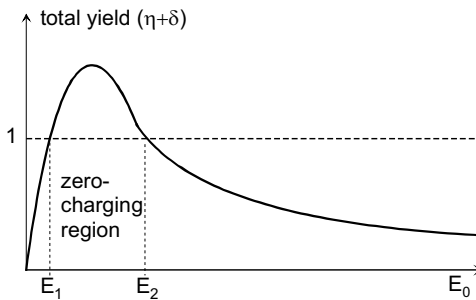


Figure 5-20. Total electron yield ( $\eta + \delta$ ) as a function of primary energy, showing the range ( $E_1$  to  $E_2$ ) over which electrostatic charging of an insulating specimen is not a problem.

Typically,  $E_2$  is in the range 1 – 10 keV. Although there are tables giving values for common materials (Joy and Joy, 1996),  $E_2$  is usually found experimentally, by reducing the accelerating voltage until charging artifacts (distortion or pulsating of the image) disappear.  $E_1$  is typically a few hundred volts, below the normal range of SEM operation.

The use of **low-voltage SEM** is therefore a practical option for imaging insulating specimens. The main disadvantage of low  $E_0$  is the increased chromatic-aberration broadening of the electron probe, given approximately by  $r_c = C_c \alpha (\Delta E / E_0)$ . This problem can be minimized by using a field-emission source (which has a low energy spread:  $\Delta E < 0.5$  eV) and by careful design of the objective lens to reduce the chromatic-aberration coefficient  $C_c$ . This is an area of continuing research and development.

## 5.8 The Environmental SEM

An alternative approach to overcoming the specimen-charging problem is to surround the specimen with a gaseous ambient rather than high vacuum. In this situation, the primary electrons ionize gas molecules before reaching the specimen. If the specimen charges negatively, positive ions are attracted toward it, largely neutralizing the surface charge.

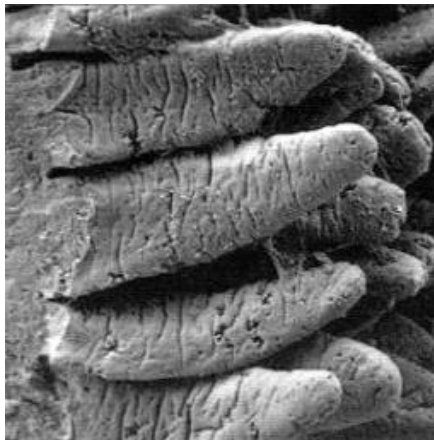
Of course, there must still be a good vacuum within the SEM column in order to allow the operation of a thermionic or field-emission source, to enable a high voltage to be used to accelerate the electrons and to permit the focusing of electrons without scattering from gas molecules. In an **environmental SEM** (also called a low-vacuum SEM), primary electrons encounter gas molecules only during the last few mm of their journey, after being focused by the objective lens. A small-diameter aperture in the bore of the objective allows the electrons to pass through but prevents most gas molecules from traveling up the SEM column. Those that do so are removed by continuous pumping. In some designs, a second pressure-differential aperture is placed just below the electron gun, to allow an adequate vacuum to be maintained in the gun, which has its own vacuum pump.

The pressure in the sample chamber can be as high as 5000 Pa (0.05 atmosphere), although a few hundred Pascal is more typical. The gas surrounding the specimen is often water vapor, as this choice allows *wet specimens* to be examined in the SEM without dehydration, provided the specimen-chamber pressure exceeds the saturated vapor pressure (SVP) of water at the temperature of the specimen. At 25°C, the SVP of water is about 3000 Pa. However the required pressure can be reduced by a factor of 5 or more by cooling the specimen, using a thermoelectric element incorporated into the specimen stage.

A backscattered-electron image can be obtained in the environmental SEM, using the detectors described previously. An Everhart-Thornley detector cannot be used because the voltage used to accelerate secondary electrons would cause electrical discharge within the specimen chamber. Instead, a potential of a few hundred volts is applied to a ring-shaped electrode just below the objective lens; secondary electrons initiate a *controlled* discharge between this electrode and the specimen, resulting in a current that is amplified and used as the SE signal.

Examples of specimens that have been successfully imaged in the environmental SEM include plant and animal tissue (see Fig. 5-21), textile specimens (which charge easily in a regular SEM), rubber, and ceramics. Oily specimens can also be examined without contaminating the entire SEM; hydrocarbon molecules that escape through the differential aperture are quickly removed by the vacuum pumps.

The environmental chamber extends the range of materials that can be examined by SEM and avoids the need for coating the specimen to make it conducting. The main drawback to ionizing gas molecules during the final phase of their journey is that the primary electrons are scattered and deflected from their original path. This effect adds an additional skirt (tail) to the current-density distribution of the electron probe, degrading the image resolution and contrast. Therefore, an environmental SEM would usually be operated as a high-vacuum SEM (by turning off the gas supply) in the case of conductive specimens that do not have a high vapor pressure.



*Figure 5-21.* The inner wall of the intestine of a mouse, imaged in an environmental SEM. The width of the image is 0.7 mm. Courtesy of ISI / Akashi Beam Technology Corporation.

## 5.9 Electron-Beam Lithography

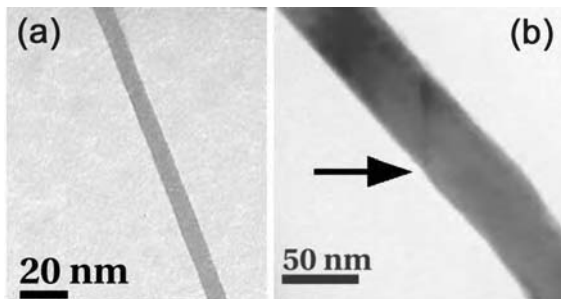
Electrons can have a permanent effect on an electron-microscope specimen, generally known as radiation damage. In inorganic materials, high-energy electrons that are “elastically” scattered through large angles can transfer enough energy to atomic nuclei to displace the atoms from their lattice site in a crystal, creating displacement damage visible in a TEM image, such as the point-defect clusters shown in Fig. 4-16. In organic materials, radiation damage occurs predominantly as a result of *inelastic* scattering; the bonding configuration of valence electrons is disturbed, often resulting in the permanent breakage of chemical bonds and the destruction of the original structure of the solid. This makes it difficult to perform high-resolution microscopy (TEM or SEM) on organic materials, such as polymers (plastics) and impossible to observe living tissue at a subcellular level.

However, radiation damage is put to good use in polymer materials known as **resists**, whose purpose is to generate structures that are subsequently transferred to a material of interest, in a process referred to as **lithography**. In a **positive** resist, the main radiation effect is bond breakage. As a result, the molecular weight of the polymer decreases and the material becomes more soluble in an organic solvent. If an SEM is modified slightly by connecting its *x* and *y* deflection coils to a pattern generator, the electron beam is scanned in a non-raster manner and a pattern of radiation damage is produced in the polymer. If the polymer is a thin layer on the surface of a substrate, such as a silicon wafer, subsequent “development” in an organic solvent results in the scanned pattern appearing as a pattern of bare substrate. The *undissolved* areas of polymer form a barrier to chemical or ion-beam etching of the substrate (Section 4.10), hence it acts as a “resist.” After etching and removing the remaining resist, the pattern has been transferred to the substrate and can be used to make useful devices, often in large number. The fabrication of silicon integrated circuits (such as computer chips) makes use of this process, repeated many times to form complex multilayer structures, but using ultraviolet light or x-rays as the radiation source. Electrons are used for smaller-scale projects, requiring high resolution but where production speed (throughput) is less important. Resist exposure is done using either a specialized electron-beam writer or an SEM.

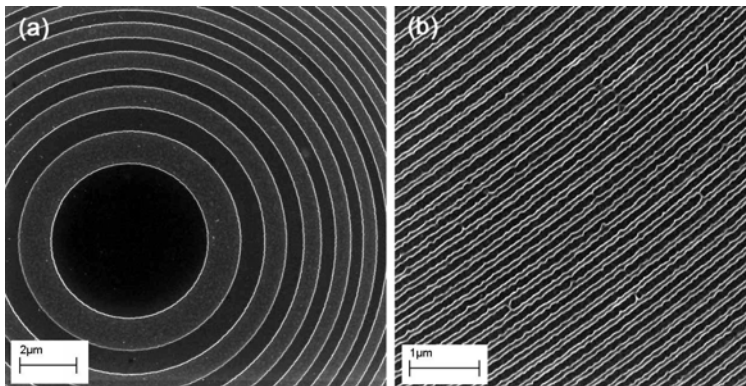
In a **negative** resist, radiation causes an *increase* in the extent of chemical bonding (by “cross-linking” organic molecules), giving an increase in molecular weight and a reduction in solubility in exposed areas. After development, the pattern is a “negative” of the beam-writing pattern, in the sense that resist material remains in areas where the beam was present (similar to undissolved silver in a black-and-white photographic negative).



One example of this process is electron-beam contamination (Section 3.6), in which hydrocarbon molecules adsorbed onto a surface are polymerized into a material of high molecular weight that is impossible to remove by most solvents. Once again, this generally-unwanted effect can be put to good use, by using the polymerized layer as an ion-beam resist; see Fig. 5-22. As in case of positive resists, many types of negative resist are commercially available. The choice of the tone (negative or positive) and the chemical nature of the resist are dictated by the application.



*Figure 5-22.* (a) Hydrocarbon-contamination line written onto a thin substrate by scanning a focused probe of 200-keV electrons. (b) A broader line transferred to polycrystalline bismuth by argon-ion etching. The arrow indicates the position of a grain boundary in the bismuth. Courtesy of M. Malac, National Institute of Nanotechnology, Canada.



*Figure 5-23.* (a) Central region of a zone plate, fabricated by e-beam lithography and imaged with secondary electrons. Bright rings are topographical contrast due to the step between bare Si substrate and PMMA-covered Si, but weak materials contrast is also present: the bare Si appears brighter because of its higher backscattering coefficient, giving a larger SE2 signal. (b) Outer region of the zone plate, where the spatial resolution and accuracy of the pattern represent an engineering challenge. Courtesy of Peng Li and Mirwais Aktary, Applied Nanotools Inc., Edmonton, Canada.

For microelectronics and nanotechnology applications, patterns must be generated on a very fine scale, and the spatial resolution of the pattern is of prime concern. Electrons can be focused into a probe of very small diameter, but when they penetrate a thick solid, the beam spreads laterally (Fig. 5-3), and so the backscattered electrons (which affect a resist coating the surface) cause a loss in resolution, just as in secondary-electron imaging. One solution is to use a thin substrate in which backscattering is minimal, allowing line widths as small as 10 nm; see Fig. 5-22. Another option is to use electrons of low incident energy, where the penetration and lateral spreading of the beam in the substrate are small. In addition to electronics applications, a recent use of electron-beam lithography has been to fabricate zone plates for focusing x-rays; see Fig. 5-23.



## Chapter 6

# ANALYTICAL ELECTRON MICROSCOPY

The TEM and SEM techniques described in earlier chapters yield valuable information about the external or internal *structure* of a specimen, but little about its chemical composition. Some of the phenomena involved (diffracted electrons in TEM, BSE in the SEM) depend on the local atomic number  $Z$ , but not to an extent that would enable us to distinguish between adjacent elements in the periodic table. For that purpose, we need a signal that is highly  $Z$ -specific; for example, an effect that involves the electron-shell structure of an atom. Clearly, the latter is element-specific because it determines the position of each element in the periodic table.

### 6.1 The Bohr Model of the Atom

A scientific *model* provides a means of accounting for the properties of an object, preferably using familiar concepts. To understand the electron-shell structure of an atom, we will use the *semi-classical* description of an atom given by Niels Bohr in 1913. Bohr's concept resembles the Rutherford planetary model insofar as it assumes the atom to consist of a central nucleus (charge =  $+Ze$ ) surrounded by electrons that behave as *particles* (charge  $-e$  and mass  $m$ ). The attractive Coulomb force exerted on an electron (by the nucleus) supplies the centripetal force necessary to keep the electron in a circular orbit of radius  $r$ :

$$K(Ze)(e)/r^2 = mv^2/r \quad (6.1)$$

Here,  $K = 1/(4\pi\epsilon_0)$  is the Coulomb constant and  $v$  is the tangential speed of the electron. The Bohr model *differs* from that of Rutherford by introducing a requirement that the orbit is *allowed* only if it satisfies the condition:

$$(mv)r = n(h/2\pi) \quad (6.2)$$

where  $h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34}$  Js is the Planck constant. Because the left-hand side of Eq. (6.2) represents the angular momentum of the electron and because  $n$  is any *integer*, known as the (principal) **quantum number**, Eq. (6.2) represents the *quantization* of angular momentum. Without this condition, the atom is unstable: the centripetal *acceleration* of the electron would cause it to emit electromagnetic radiation and quickly spiral into the nucleus. This problem does not arise in connection with planets in the solar system because they are electrically neutral.

Using Eq. (6.2) to substitute for  $v$  in Eq. (6.1) provides the radius  $r_n$  of the orbit of quantum number  $n$  :

$$r_n = n^2 (h/2\pi)^2 / (KmZe^2) = n^2 a_0 / Z \quad (6.3)$$

Here,  $a_0 = 0.053$  nm is the (first) **Bohr radius**, corresponding to the radius of a hydrogen atom ( $Z = 1$ ) in its lowest-energy **ground state** ( $n = 1$ ). We can now use Eq. (6.2) to solve for the orbital speed  $v_n$  or, more usefully, employ Eq. (6.1) to calculate the total energy  $E_n$  of an orbiting electron as the sum of its kinetic and potential energies:

$$\begin{aligned} E_n &= mv^2/2 - K(Ze)(e)/r_n = KZe^2/(2r_n) - KZe^2/r_n \\ &= -KZ e^2/(2r_n) = -R (Z^2/n^2) \end{aligned} \quad (6.4)$$

Here,  $R = Ke^2/(2a_0) = 13.6$  eV is the **Rydberg energy**, the energy needed to remove the electron from a *hydrogen* atom ( $Z^2 = 1$ ) in its ground state ( $n = 1$ ) and therefore equal to the **ionization energy** of hydrogen.

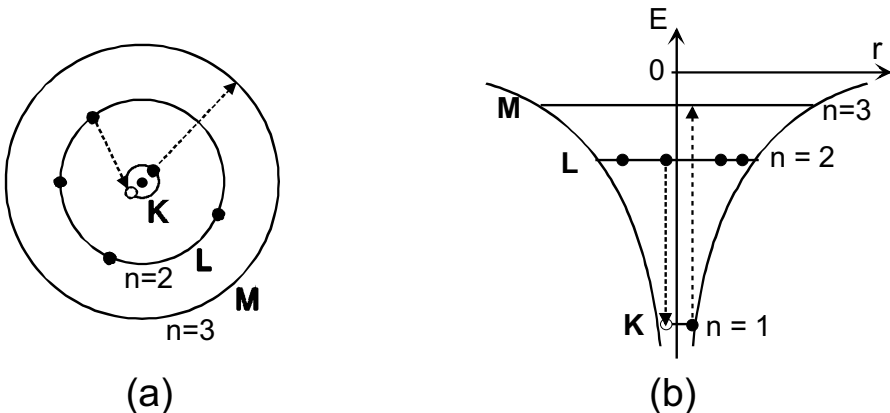


Figure 6-1. Bohr model of a carbon atom, visualized in terms of (a) electron orbits and (b) the equivalent energy levels. The orbits are also described as electron shells and are designated as K ( $n = 1$ ), L ( $n = 2$ ), M ( $n = 3$ ) and so forth. The dashed arrows illustrate a possible scenario for x-ray emission: a K-shell electron ( $n_l = 1$ ) is excited to the empty M-shell ( $n_u = 3$ ) and an L-shell electron fills the K-shell vacancy in a de-excitation process ( $n_l = 1, n_u = 2$ ).

An appealing feature of the Bohr model is that it provides an explanation of the photon-emission and photon-absorption spectra of hydrogen, in terms of electron transitions between allowed orbits or energy levels. When excess energy is imparted to a gas (e.g., by passing an electrical current, as in a low-pressure discharge), each atom can *absorb* only a quantized amount of energy, sufficient to excite its electron to an orbit of higher quantum number. In the **de-excitation** process, the atom *loses* energy and emits a photon of well-defined energy  $hf$  given by:

$$hf = -R Z^2/n_u^2 - (-R Z^2/n_l^2) = RZ^2(1/n_l^2 - 1/n_u^2) \quad (6.5)$$

where  $n_u$  and  $n_l$  are the quantum numbers of the *upper* and *lower* energy levels involved in the electron transition; see Fig. 6-1. Equation (6.5) predicts rather accurately the photon energies of the bright lines in the photoemission spectra of hydrogen ( $Z = 1$ );  $n_l = 1$  corresponds to the Lyman series in the ultraviolet region,  $n_l = 2$  to the Balmer series in the visible region, and so forth. Equation (6.5) also gives the energies of the dark (Fraunhofer) lines that result when white light is selectively *absorbed* by hydrogen gas, as when radiation generated in the interior of the sun passes through its outer atmosphere.

Unfortunately, Eq. (6.5) is not accurate for elements other than hydrogen, as Eq. (6.1) does not take into account electrostatic interaction (repulsion) *between* the electrons that orbit the nucleus. To illustrate the importance of this interaction, Table 6-1 lists the ionization energy ( $-E_1$ ) of the lowest-energy ( $n = 1$ ) electron in several elements, as calculated from Eq. (6.4) and as determined experimentally, from spectroscopy measurements.

Table 6-1. K-shell ( $n = 1$ ) ionization energies for several elements, expressed in eV.

Element	Z	$-E_1$ (Bohr)	$-E_1$ (measured)
H	1	13.6	13.6
He	2	54.4	24.6
Li	3	122	54.4
C	6	490	285
Al	13	2298	1560
Cu	29	11,440	8979
Au	79	84,880	80,729

Many-electron atoms represent a difficult theoretical problem because, in a classical (particle) model, the distance between the different orbiting electrons is always changing. In any event, a more realistic conception of the atom uses **wave mechanics**, treating the atomic electrons as *de Broglie* waves. Analysis then involves solving the Schrödinger wave equation to determine the electron **wavefunctions**, represented by **orbitals** (pictured as charge-density clouds) that replace the concept of particle orbits. An exact solution is possible for hydrogen and results in binding energies that are identical to those predicted by Eq. (6.4). Approximate methods are used for the other elements, and in many cases the calculated energy levels are reasonably close to those determined from optical spectroscopy.

Other wave-mechanical principles determine the maximum number of electrons in each atomic shell: 2 for the innermost K-shell, 8 for the L-shell, 18 for the M-shell and so forth. Because an atom in its *ground* state represents the *minimum-energy* configuration, electrons fill these shells in sequence (with increasing atomic number), starting with the K-shell.

As indicated by Table 6-1, the measured energy levels differ substantially between different elements, resulting in photon energies (always a *difference* in energy between two atomic shells) that can be used to identify each element. Except for H, He, and Li, these photon energies are above 100 eV and lie within the *x-ray* region of the electromagnetic spectrum.

## 6.2 X-ray Emission Spectroscopy

When a primary electron enters a TEM or SEM specimen, it has a (small) probability of being scattered inelastically by an *inner-shell* (e.g. K-shell) electron, causing the latter to undergo a transition to a higher-energy orbit (or wave-mechanical state) and leaving the atom with an electron vacancy (hole) in its inner shell. However, the scattering atom remains in this *excited* state for only a very brief period of time: within about  $10^{-15}$  s, one of the other atomic electrons fills the inner-shell vacancy by making a *downward* transition from a higher energy level, as in Fig. 6-1b. In this de-excitation process, energy can be released in the form of a *photon* whose energy ( $hf$ ) is given roughly by Eq. (6.5) but more accurately by the *actual* difference in binding energy between the upper and lower levels.

The energy of this **characteristic x-ray** photon therefore depends on the atomic number  $Z$  of the atom involved and on the quantum numbers ( $n_l, n_u$ ) of the energy levels involved in the electron transition. Characteristic x-rays can be classified according to the following historical scheme. The electron shell in which the original inner-shell vacancy was created, which corresponds to the quantum number  $n_l$ , is represented by an upper-case

letter; thus K implies that  $n_l = 1$ , L implies  $n_l = 1$ , M implies  $n_l = 1$  and so on. This Roman symbol is followed by a Greek letter that represents the *change in* quantum number:  $\alpha$  denotes  $(n_u - n_l) = 1$ ,  $\beta$  denotes  $(n_u - n_l) = 2$ , and  $\gamma$  denotes  $(n_u - n_l) = 3$ . Sometimes a numerical subscript is added to allow for the fact that some energy levels are split into components of slightly different energy, due to quantum-mechanical effects.

The transition sequence represented in Fig. 6-1b would therefore result in a  $K\alpha$  x-ray being emitted, and in the case of carbon there is no other possibility. With an atom of higher atomic number, containing electrons in its M-shell, an M- to K-shell transition would result in a  $K\beta$  x-ray (of greater energy) being emitted. Similarly, a vacancy created (by inelastic scattering of a primary electron) in the L-shell might result in emission of an  $L\alpha$  photon. These possibilities are illustrated in Fig. 6-2, which shows the x-ray emission spectrum recorded from a TEM specimen consisting of a thin film of nickel oxide (NiO) deposited onto a thin carbon film and supported on a molybdenum (Mo) TEM grid.

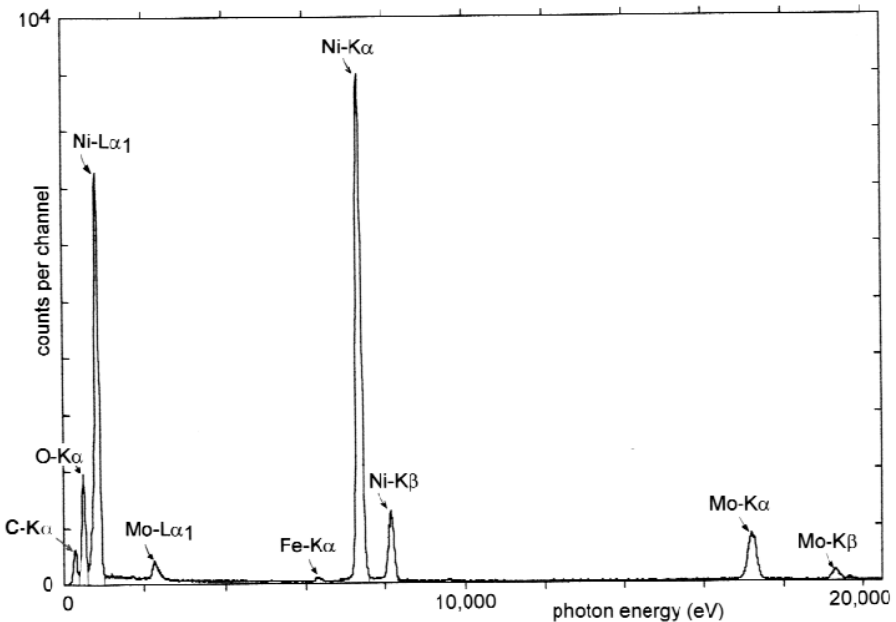


Figure 6-2. X-ray emission spectrum (number of x-ray photons as a function of photon energy) recorded from a TEM specimen (NiO thin film on a Mo grid), showing characteristic peaks due to the elements C, O, Ni, Mo, and Fe. For Ni and Mo, both K- and L-peaks are visible. Mo peaks arise from the grid material; the weak Fe peak is from the TEM polepieces.



Figure 6-2 also demonstrates some general features of x-ray emission spectroscopy. First, each element gives rise to *at least one* characteristic peak and can be identified from the photon energy associated with this peak. Second, medium- and high-*Z* elements show *several* peaks (K, L, etc.); this complicates the spectrum but can be useful for multi-element specimens where some characteristic peaks may overlap with each other, making the measurement of elemental concentrations problematical if based on only a single peak per element. Third, there are always a few stray electrons outside the focused electron probe (due to spherical aberration, for example), so the x-ray spectrum contains contributions from elements in the nearby environment, such as the TEM support grid or objective-lens polepieces.

High-*Z* atoms contain a large number of electron shells and can in principle give rise to *many* characteristic peaks. In practice, the number is reduced by the need to satisfy conservation of energy. As an example, gold ( $Z = 79$ ) has its K-emission peaks above 77 keV, so in an SEM, where the primary-electron energy is rarely above 30 keV, the primary electrons do not have enough energy to excite K-peaks in the x-ray spectrum.

The characteristic peaks in the x-ray emission spectrum are superimposed on a continuous background that arises from the **bremstrahlung** process (German for braking radiation, implying deceleration of the electron). If a primary electron passes close to an atomic nucleus, it is elastically scattered and follows a curved (hyperbolic) trajectory, as discussed in Chapter 4. During its deflection, the electron experiences a Coulomb force and a resulting centripetal acceleration toward the nucleus. Being a charged particle, it must emit electromagnetic radiation, with an amount of energy that depends on the impact parameter of the electron. The latter is a *continuous* variable, slightly different for each primary electron, so the photons emitted have a broad range of energy and form a background to the characteristic peaks in the x-ray emission spectrum. In Fig. 6-2, this bremsstrahlung background is low but is visible between the characteristic peaks at low photon energies.

Either a TEM or an SEM can be used as the means of generating an x-ray emission spectrum from a small region of a specimen. The SEM uses a thick (bulk) specimen, into which the electrons may penetrate several micrometers (at an accelerating voltage of 30 kV), so the x-ray intensity is higher than that obtained from the thin specimen used in a TEM. In both kinds of instrument, the volume of specimen emitting x-rays depends on the *diameter* of the primary beam, which can be made very small by focusing the beam into a probe of diameter 10 nm or less. In the case of the TEM, where the sample is thin and lateral spread of the beam (due to elastic scattering) is limited, the analyzed volume can be as small as  $10^{-19}$  cm<sup>2</sup>, allowing detection

of less than  $10^{-19}$  g of an element. In the SEM, x-rays are emitted from the entire interaction volume, which becomes larger as the incident energy of the electrons is increased (Fig. 5-3).

To generate a spectrum from the emitted x-rays, we need some form of *dispersive* device that distinguishes x-ray photons on the basis of either their energy ( $E = hf$ , where  $f$  is the frequency of the electromagnetic wave) or their wavelength ( $\lambda = c/f = hc/E$ , where  $c$  is the speed of light in vacuum). Although photon energy and wavelength are closely related, these two options give rise to two distinct forms of spectroscopy, which we discuss in Sections 6.3 and 6.6.

### 6.3 X-ray Energy-Dispersive Spectroscopy

In x-ray energy-dispersive spectroscopy (XEDS), the dispersive device is a semiconductor diode, fabricated from a single crystal of silicon (or germanium) and somewhat similar to the BSE detector in an SEM. If an x-ray photon enters and penetrates to the transition region (between p- and n-doped material), its energy can release a considerable number of outer-shell (valence) electrons from the confinement of a particular atomic nucleus. This process is equivalent to exciting electrons from the valence to the conduction band (i.e., the creation of electron-hole pairs) and results in electrical conduction by both electrons and holes for a brief period of time. With a reverse-bias voltage applied to the diode, this conduction causes electrical charge to flow through the junction (and around an external circuit), the charge being proportional to the number  $N$  of electron-hole pairs generated. Assuming that all of the photon energy ( $hf$ ) goes into creating electron-hole (e-h) pairs, each pair requiring an average energy  $\Delta E$ , energy conservation implies:

$$N = hf / \Delta E \quad (6.6)$$

For silicon,  $\Delta E \approx 4$  eV (just over *twice* the energy gap between valence and conduction bands), therefore a Cu-K $\alpha$  photon creates about  $(8000\text{eV})/(4\text{eV}) = 2000$  e-h pairs.

To ensure that essentially *all* of the incoming x-rays are absorbed and generate current pulses in an external circuit, the p-n transition region is made much *wider* than in most semiconductor diodes. In the case of silicon, this can be done by diffusing in the element lithium ( $Z = 3$ ), which annihilates the effect of other electrically-active (dopant) impurities and creates a high-resistivity (intrinsic) region several mm in width; see Fig. 6-3.

If the semiconductor diode were operated at room temperature, *thermal* generation of electron-hole pairs would contribute too much electronic noise

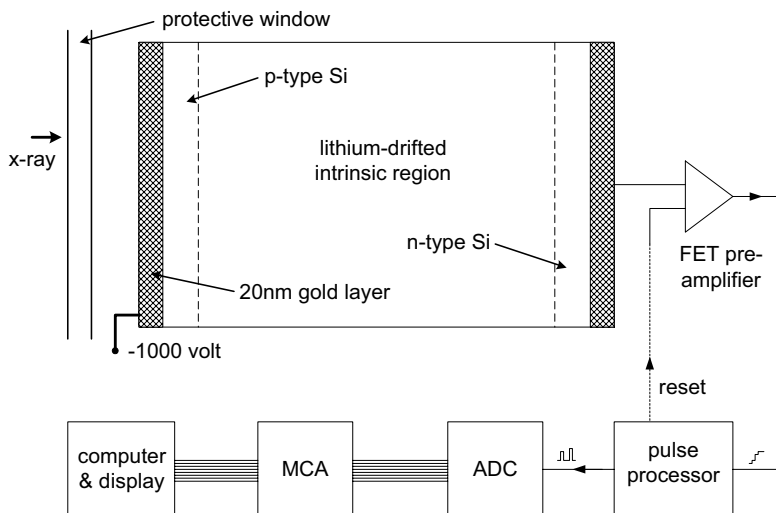


Figure 6-3. Schematic diagram of a XEDS detector and its signal-processing circuitry.

to the x-ray spectrum. Therefore the diode is cooled to about 140 K, via a metal rod that has good thermal contact with an insulated (dewar) vessel containing liquid nitrogen at 77 K. To prevent water vapor and hydrocarbon molecules (present at low concentration in an SEM or TEM vacuum) from condensing onto the cooled diode, a thin protective window precedes the diode; see Fig. 6-3. Originally this window was a thin ( $\approx 8 \mu\text{m}$ ) layer of beryllium, which because of its low atomic number ( $Z = 4$ ) transmits most x-rays without absorption. More recently, ultra-thin windows (also of low- $Z$  materials, such as diamond or boron nitride) are used to minimize the absorption of low-energy ( $< 1 \text{ keV}$ ) photons and allow the XEDS system to analyze elements of low atomic number ( $Z < 12$ ) via their K-emission peaks.

The current pulses from the detector crystal are fed into a field-effect transistor (FET) preamplifier located just behind the diode (see Fig. 6-3) and also cooled to reduce electronic noise. For noise-related reasons, the FET acts as a *charge-integrating* amplifier: for each photon absorbed, its output voltage increases by an amount that is proportional to its input, which is proportional to  $N$  and, according to Eq. (6.6), to the photon energy. The output of the FET is therefore a *staircase* waveform (Fig. 6-4a) with the height of each step proportional to the corresponding photon energy. Before the FET output reaches its saturation level (above which the FET would no longer respond to its input), the voltage is reset to zero by applying an electrical (or optical) trigger signal to the FET.

A pulse-processing circuit (Fig. 6-3) converts each voltage step into a signal *pulse* whose height is proportional to the voltage step and which is therefore proportional to the photon energy; see Fig. 6-4b. An analog-to-digital converter (ADC) then produces a sequence of constant-height pulses from each signal pulse (Fig. 6-4c), their number being proportional to the input-pulse height. This procedure is called **pulse-height analysis (PHA)** and is also used in particle-physics instrumentation. Finally, a **multichannel analyzer (MCA)** circuit counts the number ( $n$ ) of pulses in each ADC-output sequence and increments (by one count) the number stored at the  $n$ 'th location (address) of a computer-memory bank, signifying the recording of a photon whose energy is proportional to  $n$ , and therefore to  $N$  and to photon energy. At frequent time intervals (such as 1 s), the computer-memory contents are read out as a spectrum display (Fig. 6-4d) in which the horizontal axis represents photon energy and the vertical scale represents the number of photons counted at that energy.

Typically, the spectrum contains  $2^{12} = 4096$  memory locations (known as channels) and each channel corresponds to a 10 eV range of photon energy, in which case the entire spectrum extends from zero and just over 40 keV, sufficient to include almost all the characteristic x-rays. Because the number  $N$  of electron-hole pairs produced in the detector is subject to a statistical variation, each characteristic peak has a width of *several* channels. The peaks therefore appear to have a smooth (Gaussian) profile, centered around the characteristic photon energy but with a width of  $\approx 150$  eV, as in Fig. 6-2.

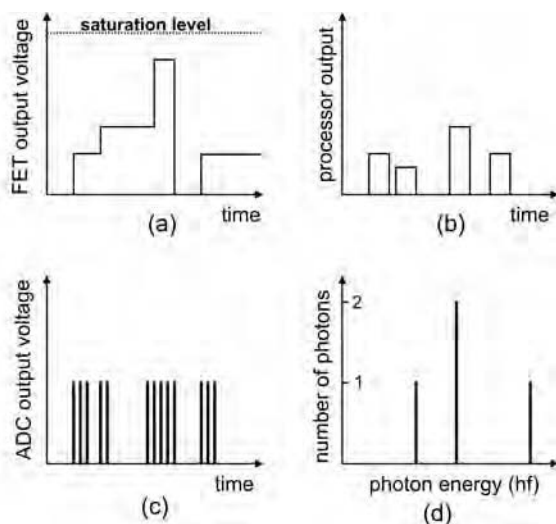


Figure 6-4. Voltage output signals of (a) the FET preamplifier, (b) the pulse-processor circuit, and (c) the analog-to-digital converter (ADC), resulting in (d) the XEDS-spectrum display.

Ideally, each peak in the XEDS spectrum represents an element present *within a known region of the specimen*, defined by the focused probe. In practice, there are often additional peaks due to elements beyond that region or even outside the specimen. Electrons that are backscattered (or in a TEM, forward-scattered through a large angle) strike objects (lens polepieces, parts of the specimen holder) in the immediate vicinity of the specimen and generate x-rays that are characteristic of those objects. Fe and Cu peaks can be produced in this way. In the case of the TEM, a special “analytical” specimen holder is used whose tip (surrounding the specimen) is made from beryllium ( $Z = 4$ ), which generates a single K-emission peak at an energy below what is detectable by most XEDS systems. Also, the TEM objective aperture is usually removed during x-ray spectroscopy, to avoid generating backscattered electrons at the aperture, which would bombard the specimen from below and produce x-rays far from the focused probe. Even so, spurious peaks sometimes appear, generated from thick regions at the edge a thinned specimen or by a specimen-support grid. Therefore, caution has to be used in interpreting the significance of the x-ray peaks.

It takes a certain period of time (conversion time) for the PHA circuitry to analyze the height of each pulse. Because x-ray photons enter the detector at random times, there is a certain probability of another x-ray photon arriving within this conversion time. To avoid generating a false reading, the PHA circuit ignores such double events, whose occurrence increases as the photon-arrival rate increases. A given recording time therefore consists of two components: **live time**, during which the system is processing data, and **dead time**, during which the circuitry is made inactive. The beam current in the TEM or SEM should be kept low enough to ensure that the dead time is less than the live time, otherwise the number of photons *measured* in a given recording time starts to fall; see Fig. 6-5.

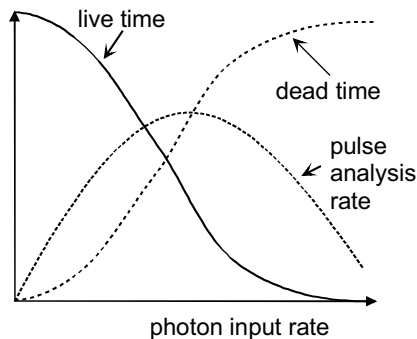


Figure 6-5. Live time, dead time, and pulse-analysis rate, as a function of the generation rate of x-rays in the specimen.

The time taken to record a useful XEDS spectrum is dictated by the need to clearly identify the *position* of each significant peak (its characteristic energy) and also, for measurement of elemental ratios, the *total number of photon counts* in each peak (the peak integral or area). If the recording time is too short, an insufficient number of x-ray photons will be analyzed and the spectrum will be “noisy.” This electronic noise arises from the fact that the generation of x-rays in the specimen is a statistical process, giving rise to a statistical variation in the number of counts per channel in the XEDS spectrum. According to the rules of (Poisson) statistics, if  $N$  randomly-arriving photons are recorded, we can expect a *variation* in that number (the standard deviation) equal to  $N^{1/2}$  if the experiment were repeated many times. The accuracy of measuring  $N$  is therefore  $N^{1/2}$  and the fractional accuracy is  $N^{1/2}/N = N^{-1/2} = 0.1$  for  $N = 100$ . As a result, we need *at least* 100 x-ray counts in a characteristic peak in order to measure the concentration of the corresponding element to an accuracy of 10%. Typically, this condition implies a recording time of at least 10 s, and sometimes several minutes if the x-ray generation rate is low (e.g., with a thin specimen in the TEM).

One important feature of XEDS analysis is that it can provide a *quantitative* estimate of the concentration ratios of elements present in a specimen. The first requirement is to determine the number of characteristic x-ray photons contributing to each peak, by measuring the area (integral) of the peak and subtracting a contribution from the bremsstrahlung background. This background contribution is estimated by measuring the background on either side of the peak, then interpolating or (for greater accuracy) fitting the background to some simple mathematical function. However, the ratio of two peak integrals is *not* equal to the ratio of the elemental concentrations, as x-rays are not emitted with equal efficiency by different elements. The physics of x-ray production is simplest for the case of a very *thin* specimen, as used in the TEM, so we consider this situation first.

## 6.4 Quantitative Analysis in the TEM

For quantification, we need an equation that relates the number  $N_A$  of x-ray photons contributing to a characteristic peak of an element A to its concentration  $n_A$  (number of atoms of element A per unit volume). We can expect  $N_A$  to be proportional to the number  $N_e$  of electrons that pass through the sample during the XEDS recording time, and to the product  $n_A t$ , where  $t$  is the specimen thickness (for thin specimens, the probability of inner-shell inelastic scattering increases proportional to  $t$ ).

However, the product  $n_A t$  (termed the areal density of the element) has dimensions of  $\text{m}^{-2}$ , whereas  $N_A$  and  $N_e$  are dimensionless numbers. In order

to balance the units in our equation, there must be an additional factor whose dimensions are  $\text{m}^2$ . This factor is the **ionization cross section**  $\sigma_A$  for creating a vacancy in an *inner shell* of element A. Such a cross section can be interpreted as a *target area* for inelastic scattering of an incident electron by the atom, as discussed Section 4.3. The value of  $\sigma_A$  depends on the type of inner shell (K, L, etc.) as well as on the atomic number of the element.

Still missing from our equation is a factor known as the **fluorescence yield** that allows for the fact that not *every* inner-shell vacancy gives rise to the emission of an x-ray photon during the de-excitation of the atom. An alternative process allows the excited atom to return to its ground state by donating energy to another electron within the atom, which is ejected as an **Auger electron** (named after its discoverer, Pierre Auger). For elements of low atomic number, this Auger process is the more probable outcome and their *x-ray* fluorescence yield  $\omega$  is considerably less than one ( $\omega \ll 1.0$ ).

A remaining factor, known as the **collection efficiency**,  $\eta$ , of the XEDS detector, reflects the fact that x-ray photons are emitted equally in all directions; they travel in straight-line paths and only a fraction  $\eta$  of them reach the detector. Combining all of these factors, the number of x-ray photons contributing to the characteristic peak of an element A is

$$N_A = (n_A t) \sigma_A \omega_A \eta N_e \quad (6.7)$$

Applying the same considerations to some other element B present in the sample, we could generate a second equation, identical to Eq. (6.7) but with subscripts B. Dividing Eq. (6.7) by this second equation, we obtain an expression for the *concentration ratio* of the two elements:

$$n_A/n_B = [(\sigma_B \omega_B)/(\sigma_A \omega_A)] (N_A/N_B) \quad (6.8)$$

The coefficient in square brackets is known as the **k-factor** of element A relative to element B. Although it is possible to *calculate* this *k-factor* from tabulated ionization cross sections and fluorescence yields, a more accurate value is obtained by *measuring* the peak-intensity ratio ( $N_A/N_B$ ) in a spectrum recorded from a “standard” sample (such as a binary compound) whose concentration ratio ( $n_A/n_B$ ) is known. This measured *k-factor* will also include any difference in collection efficiency between element A and element B (due to different absorption of x-rays in the detector window, for example).

The use of standards is common in analytical chemistry. But because the *k-factor* method was developed by metallurgists, the concentration ratio in Eq. (6.8) usually represents a *weight* ratio of two elements, rather than the *atomic* ratio  $n_A/n_B$ , and *k-factors* reflect this convention. Such *k-factors* have been measured and tabulated for most elements but their precise values

depend on the electron energy and detector design, so they are best measured using the *same* TEM/XEDS system as used for microanalysis. By analyzing characteristic peaks in pairs, the ratios of all elements in a multi-element specimen can be obtained from the measured peak integrals, knowing the appropriate *k*-factors. For further details, see Williams and Carter (1996).

## 6.5 Quantitative Analysis in the SEM

In an SEM, electrons enter a thick specimen and penetrate a certain distance, which can exceed 1  $\mu\text{m}$  (Section 5.2). Quantification is then complicated by the fact that many of the generated x-rays are absorbed before they leave the specimen. The amount of **absorption** depends on the *chemical composition* of the specimen, which is generally unknown (otherwise there is no need for microanalysis). However, x-ray absorption coefficients have been measured or calculated (as a function of photon energy) for all the chemical elements and are published in graphical or tabulated form. A legitimate procedure is therefore to *initially* assume *no* absorption of x-ray photons, by employing a procedure based on Eq. (6.8) to estimate the ratios of *all* of the elements in the specimen, then to use these ratios to estimate the x-ray absorption that *ought to* have occurred in the specimen. Correcting the measured intensities for absorption leads to a *revised* chemical composition, which can then be used to calculate absorption more accurately, and so on. After performing several cycles of this *iterative* procedure, the calculated elemental ratios should converge toward their true values.

Another complication is x-ray **fluorescence**, a process in which x-ray photons are absorbed but generate photons of lower energy. These lower-energy photons can contribute spurious intensity to a characteristic peak, changing the measured elemental ratio. Again, the effect can be calculated, but only if the chemical composition of the specimen is known. The solution is therefore to include fluorescence corrections, as well as absorption, in the iterative process described above. Because the ionization cross sections and yields are *Z*-dependent, the whole procedure is known as **ZAF correction** (making allowance for atomic number, absorption, and fluorescence) and is carried out by running a ZAF program on the computer that handles the acquisition and display of the x-ray emission spectrum.

## 6.6 X-ray Wavelength-Dispersive Spectroscopy

In x-ray wavelength-dispersive spectroscopy (XWDS), characteristic x-rays are distinguished on the basis of their *wavelength* rather than their photon energy. This is done by taking advantage of the fact that a crystal behaves as



a three-dimensional diffraction grating and reflects (strongly diffracts) x-ray photons if their wavelength  $\lambda$  satisfies the Bragg equation:

$$n\lambda = 2 d \sin\theta_i \quad (6.9)$$

As before,  $n$  is the *order* of the reflection (usually the first order is used), and  $\theta_i$  is the angle between the incident x-ray beam and atomic planes (with a particular set of Miller indices) of spacing  $d$  in the crystal. By continuously changing  $\theta_i$ , different x-ray wavelengths are selected in turn and therefore, with an appropriately located detector, the x-ray intensity can be measured as a function of wavelength.

The way in which this is accomplished is shown in Fig. 6-6. A primary-electron beam enters a thick specimen (e.g., in an SEM) and generates x-rays, a small fraction of which travel toward the analyzing crystal. X-rays within a narrow range of wavelength are Bragg-reflected, leave the crystal at an angle  $2\theta_i$  relative to the incident x-ray beam, and arrive at the detector, usually a gas-flow tube (Fig. 6-6). When an x-ray photon enters the detector through a thin (e.g., beryllium or plastic) window, it is absorbed by gas present within the tube via the photoelectric effect. This process releases an energetic photoelectron, which ionizes other gas molecules through inelastic scattering. All the electrons are attracted toward the central wire electrode, connected to a +3-kV supply, causing a current pulse to flow in the power-supply circuit. The pulses are counted, and an output signal proportional to the count rate represents the x-ray intensity at a particular wavelength.

Because longer-wavelength x-rays would be absorbed in air, the detector and analyzing crystal are held within the microscope vacuum. Gas (often a mixture of argon and methane) is supplied continuously to the detector tube to maintain an internal pressure around 1 atmosphere.

To *decrease* the detected wavelength, the crystal is moved *toward* the specimen, along the arc of a circle (known as a Rowland circle; see Fig. 6-6) such that the x-ray angle of incidence  $\theta_i$  is *reduced*. Simultaneously, the detector is moved toward the crystal, also along the Rowland circle, so that the reflected beam passes through the detector window. Because the deflection angle of an x-ray beam that undergoes Bragg scattering is  $2\theta_i$ , the detector must be moved at *twice* the angular speed of the crystal to keep the reflected beam at the center of the detector.

The mechanical range of rotation is limited by practical considerations; it is not possible to cover the entire spectral range of interest ( $\lambda \approx 0.1$  to 1 nm) with a single analyzing crystal. Many XWDS systems are therefore equipped with several crystals of different  $d$ -spacing, such as lithium fluoride, quartz, and organic compounds. To make the angle of incidence  $\theta_i$  the same for x-rays arriving at different angles, the analyzing crystal is bent (by applying a

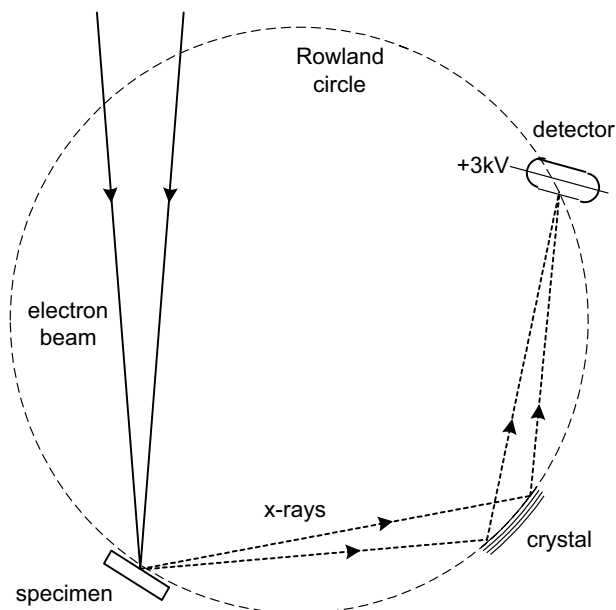


Figure 6-6. Schematic diagram of an XWDS system. For simplicity, the Bragg-reflecting planes are shown as being parallel to the surface of the analyzing crystal. The crystal and detector move around the Rowland circle (dashed) in order to record the spectrum.

mechanical force) into a slightly-curved shape, which also provides a degree of focusing similar to that of a concave mirror; see Fig. 6-6.

Although XWDS can be performed by adding the appropriate mechanical and electronic systems to an SEM, there exists a more specialized instrument, the **electron-probe microanalyzer** (EPMA), which is optimized for such work. It generates an electron probe with substantial current, as required to record an x-ray spectrum with good statistics (low noise) within a reasonable time period. The EPMA is fitted with several analyzer/detector assemblies so that more than a single wavelength range can be recorded simultaneously.

## 6.7 Comparison of XEDS and XWDS Analysis

A big advantage of the XEDS technique is the speed of data acquisition, due largely to the fact that x-rays within a wide energy range are detected and analyzed simultaneously. In contrast, the XWDS system examines only one wavelength at any one time and may take several minutes to scan the required wavelength range. The XEDS detector can be brought very close (within a few mm) of the specimen, allowing about 1% of the emitted x-rays

to be analyzed, whereas the XWDS analyzing crystal needs room to move and subtends a smaller (solid) angle, so that much less than 1% of the x-ray photons are collected. Although a commercial XEDS system costs \$50,000 or more, this is considerably *less* expensive than an EPMA machine or XWDS attachment to an SEM.

The main advantage of the XWDS system is that it provides *narrow* x-ray peaks (width  $\approx 5$  eV, rather than  $> 100$  eV for XEDS system) that stand out clearly from the background; see Fig. 6-7. This is particularly important when analyzing low- $Z$  elements (whose K-peaks are more narrowly spaced) or elements present at low concentration, whose XEDS peaks would have a low signal/background ratio, resulting in a poor accuracy of measurement. Consequently, XWDS analysis is the preferred method for measuring *low* concentrations: 200 parts per million (ppm) is fairly routine and 1 ppm is detectable in special cases. At higher concentrations, the narrow XWDS peak allows a measurement accuracy of better than 1% with the aid of ZAF corrections. In contrast, the accuracy of XEDS analysis is usually not better than 10%.

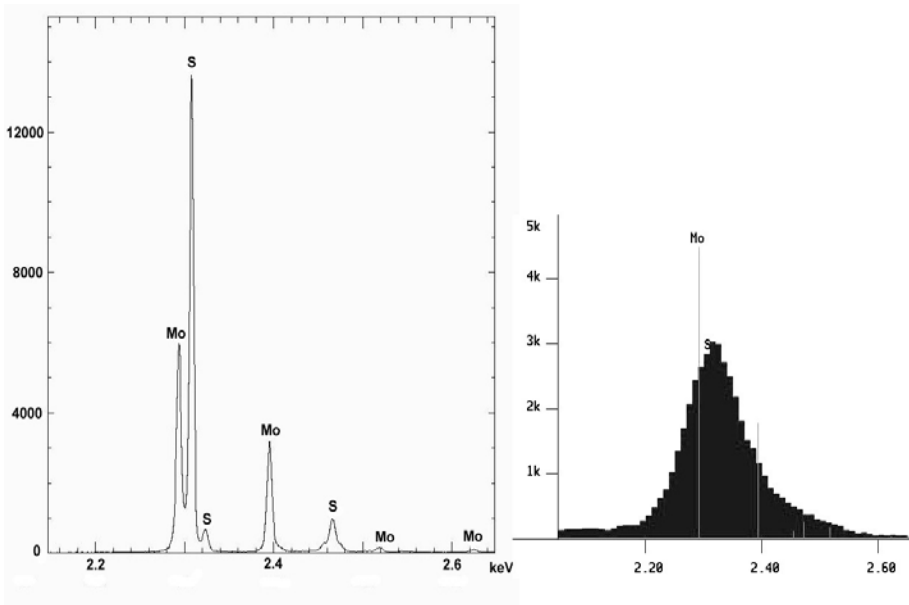


Figure 6-7. X-ray intensity as a function of photon energy (in the range 2.1 to 2.7 keV), recorded from a molybdenum disulfide ( $\text{MoS}_2$ ) specimen using (a) XWDS and (b) XEDS. The wavelength-dispersed spectrum displays peaks due to Mo and S, whereas these peaks are not separately resolved in the energy-dispersed spectrum due to the inadequate energy resolution. Courtesy of S. Matveev, Electron Microprobe Laboratory, University of Alberta.

## 6.8 Auger-Electron Spectroscopy

Both XEDS or XWDS techniques have problems when applied to the analysis of elements of low atomic number ( $Z < 11$ ) such as B, C, N, O, F. Ultrathin-window XEDS detectors make these elements visible, but the characteristic-peak intensities are reduced because of the low x-ray fluorescence yield, which falls continuously with decreasing atomic number; see Fig. 6-8. In addition, the K-emission peaks (which must be used for low- $Z$  elements) occur at energies below 1 keV. In this restricted energy region, the bremsstrahlung background is relatively high, and XEDS peaks from different elements tend to overlap. Also, the low-energy x-rays are strongly absorbed, even within a *thin* specimen, requiring a substantial (and not always accurate) correction for absorption.

One solution to the fluorescence-yield problem is to use Auger electrons as the characteristic signal. Because the x-ray yield  $\omega$  is low, the Auger yield  $(1 - \omega)$  is close to one for low- $Z$  elements. Auger electrons can be collected and analyzed using an electrostatic spectrometer, which measures their kinetic energy. However, the Auger electrons of interest have relatively low energy (below 1000 eV); they are absorbed (through inelastic scattering) if they are generated more than one or two nm below the surface of the specimen, just as with SE1 electrons. In consequence, the Auger signal measures a chemical composition of the surface of a specimen, which can be

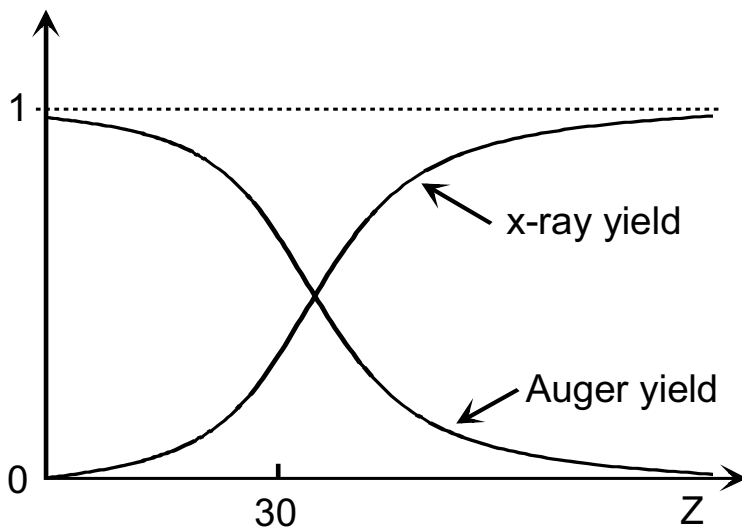


Figure 6-8. X-ray fluorescence yield, Auger yield and their sum (dashed line) for K-electron excitation, as a function of atomic number.

different from the composition of underlying material. For example, most specimens accumulate several monolayers of water and hydrocarbons when exposed to normal air, and some of this material remains on the surface when a specimen is placed in vacuum for electron-beam analysis.

As a result, Auger analysis is only useful for surfaces *prepared* in vacuum, by cleavage (breaking apart by mechanical force) or by vacuum deposition. Also, ultra-high vacuum (UHV;  $\approx 10^{-8}$  Pa) is needed in order to *maintain* the cleanliness of the surface during measurement. In a typical electron-microscope vacuum of  $10^{-4}$  Pa, about one monolayer of ambient gas molecules arrives at the surface per second, and some of these molecules remain bonded to the solid. Therefore, Auger analysis is usually done using UHV surface-science equipment that employs a relatively broad (e.g., 1 mm) electron beam, rather than an electron microscope.

## 6.9 Electron Energy-Loss Spectroscopy

An alternative approach to the microanalysis of light (low- $Z$ ) elements is to perform spectroscopy on the primary electrons that have passed through a thin TEM specimen. Because these electrons are responsible for creating (in an inelastic collision) the inner-shell vacancies that give rise to characteristic x-rays or Auger electrons, they carry atomic-number information in the form of the amount of energy that they have transferred to the specimen. Also, the *number* of electrons having a given *characteristic* energy loss is equal to the *sum* of the number of x-ray photons and Auger electrons generated in the specimen. Therefore, the energy-loss signal ought to be large enough to accurately measure light (as well as heavy) elements.

To perform **electron energy-loss spectroscopy** (EELS), it is necessary to detect *small* differences in kinetic energy. Primary electrons enter a TEM specimen with a kinetic energy of 100 keV or more, and the majority of them emerge with an energy that is lower by an amount between few electron volts and a few hundred electron volts. The only form of spectrometer that can achieve sufficient fractional resolution (of the order one part in  $10^5$ ) is a **magnetic prism**, in which a highly uniform magnetic field ( $B \approx 0.01$  Wb) is produced between two parallel faces of an electromagnet. This field exerts a force  $F = evB$  on each electron. The magnitude of the force is constant (as the speed  $v$  of the electron remains unchanged) and its direction is always perpendicular to the direction of travel of the electron, so it supplies the centripetal force necessary for motion in a circle. Equating the magnetic and centripetal forces gives:

$$evB = F = mv^2/R \quad (6.10)$$

in which  $m$  is the relativistic mass of the electron. While in the field, an electron therefore moves along the arc of a circle whose radius  $R = [m/(eB)]v$  depends on its speed and its kinetic energy. Electrons that lose energy in the specimen (through inelastic scattering) have smaller  $R$  and are deflected through a slightly larger angle than those that are elastically scattered or remain unscattered. The spectrometer therefore *disperses* the electron beam, similar to the action of a glass prism on a beam of white light.

But unlike a glass prism, the magnetic prism also focuses the electrons, bringing those of the same energy together at the exit of the spectrometer to form an electron energy-loss spectrum of the specimen. This spectrum can be recorded electronically, for example by using a CCD camera or a photodiode array; see Fig. 6-9. The electrical signal from the diode array is fed into a computer, which stores and displays the number of electrons (electron intensity) as a function of their energy loss in the specimen.

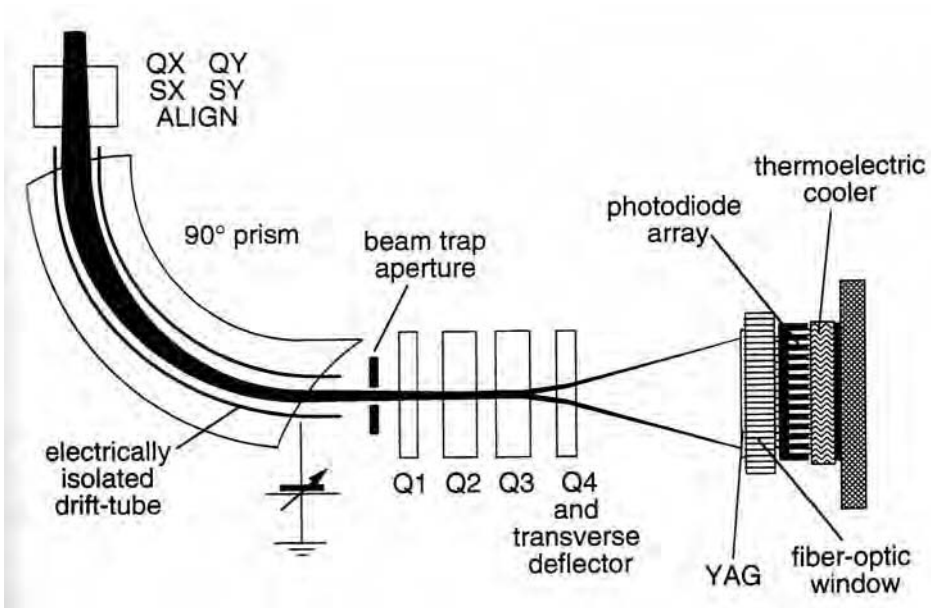


Figure 6-9. Parallel-recording electron energy-loss spectrometer that can be mounted below the viewing screen of a TEM. A uniform magnetic field (perpendicular to the plane of the diagram) bends the electron trajectories and introduces focusing and dispersion. The dispersion is magnified by quadrupole lenses Q1 – Q4, which project the spectrum onto a thin YAG scintillator, producing a photon-intensity distribution that is imaged through a fiber-optic window onto a photodiode or CCD array cooled to about  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Courtesy of Ondrej Krivanek and Gatan Inc.

A typical energy-loss spectrum (Fig. 6-10) contains a **zero-loss peak**, representing electrons that were scattered *elastically* or remained *unscattered* while passing through the specimen. Below 50 eV, one or more peaks represent *inelastic* scattering by *outer-shell* (valence or conduction) electrons in the specimen. This scattering can take the form of a *collective* oscillation (resonance) of *many* outer-shell electrons, known as a **plasmon** excitation. Inelastic excitation of *inner-shell* electrons causes an abrupt increase in electron intensity (an **ionization edge**) at an energy loss equal to an inner-shell ionization energy. Because this ionization energy is characteristic of a particular chemical element and is known for every electron shell, the energy of each ionization edge indicates which elements are present within the specimen. Beyond each ionization threshold, the spectral intensity decays more gradually toward the (extrapolated) pre-edge background that arises from electron shells of lower ionization energy. The energy-loss intensity can be integrated over a region of typically 50 – 100 eV and the background component subtracted to give a signal  $I_A$  that is proportional to the concentration of the element A that gives rise to the edge. In fact, the concentration *ratio* of two different elements (A, B) is given by:

$$n_A/n_B = (I_A/I_B) (\sigma_B/\sigma_A) \quad (6.11)$$

where  $\sigma_A$  and  $\sigma_B$  are ionization cross sections that can be calculated, knowing the atomic number, type of shell, and the integration range used for each element.

Because the magnetic prism has focusing properties, an electron spectrometer can be incorporated into the TEM imaging system and used to form an image from electrons that have undergone a particular energy loss in the specimen. Choosing this energy loss to correspond to the ionization edge of a known element, it is possible to form an **elemental map** that represents the distribution of that element, with a spatial resolution down to about 1 nm.

Other information is present in the low-loss region of the spectrum (below 50 eV). In a single-scattering approximation, the amount of inelastic scattering is proportional to specimen thickness, as in Eq. (4.16). Therefore, the intensity of the plasmon peak relative to the zero-loss peak (Fig. 6-10) can be used to measure the local thickness at a known location in a TEM specimen.

Also, the energy-loss spectrum contains detailed information about the atomic arrangement and chemical bonding in the specimen, present in the form of *fine structure* in the low loss region and the ionization edges. For example, the intensities of the two sharp peaks at the onset of the Ba M-edge in Fig. 6-10 can be used to determine the charge state (valency) of the barium atoms. For further details, see Brydson (2001) and Egerton (1996).

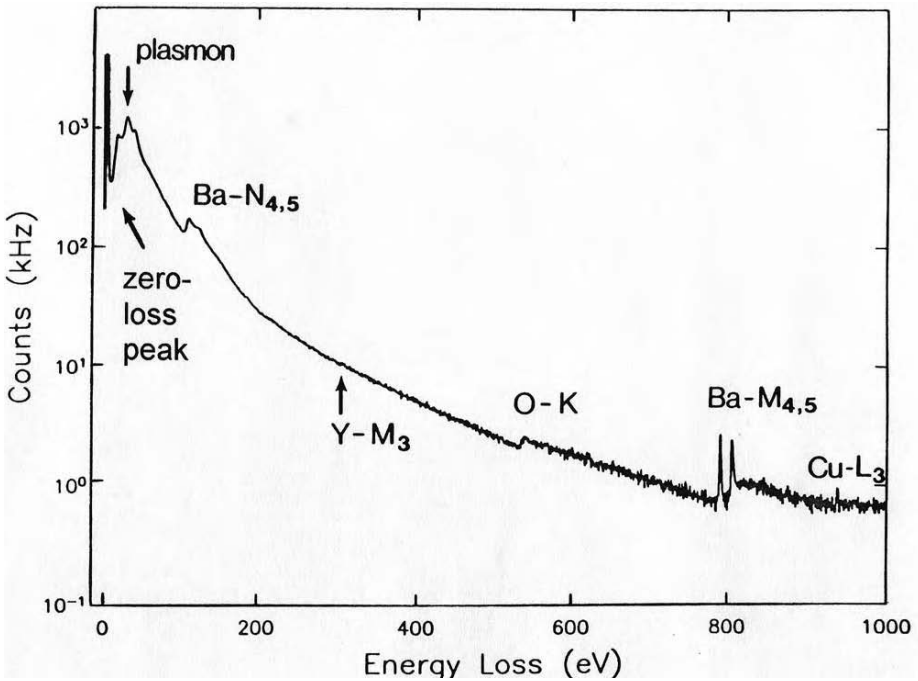


Figure 6-10. Electron energy-loss spectrum of a high-temperature superconductor, showing N- and M-shell ionization edges of barium, the K-ionization edge of oxygen, and weak ionization edges from copper and yttrium. The plasmon peak represents inelastic scattering from valence electrons. A logarithmic vertical scale has been used in order to accommodate the large range of electron intensity. Courtesy of D.H. Shin (Ph.D. thesis, Cornell University).





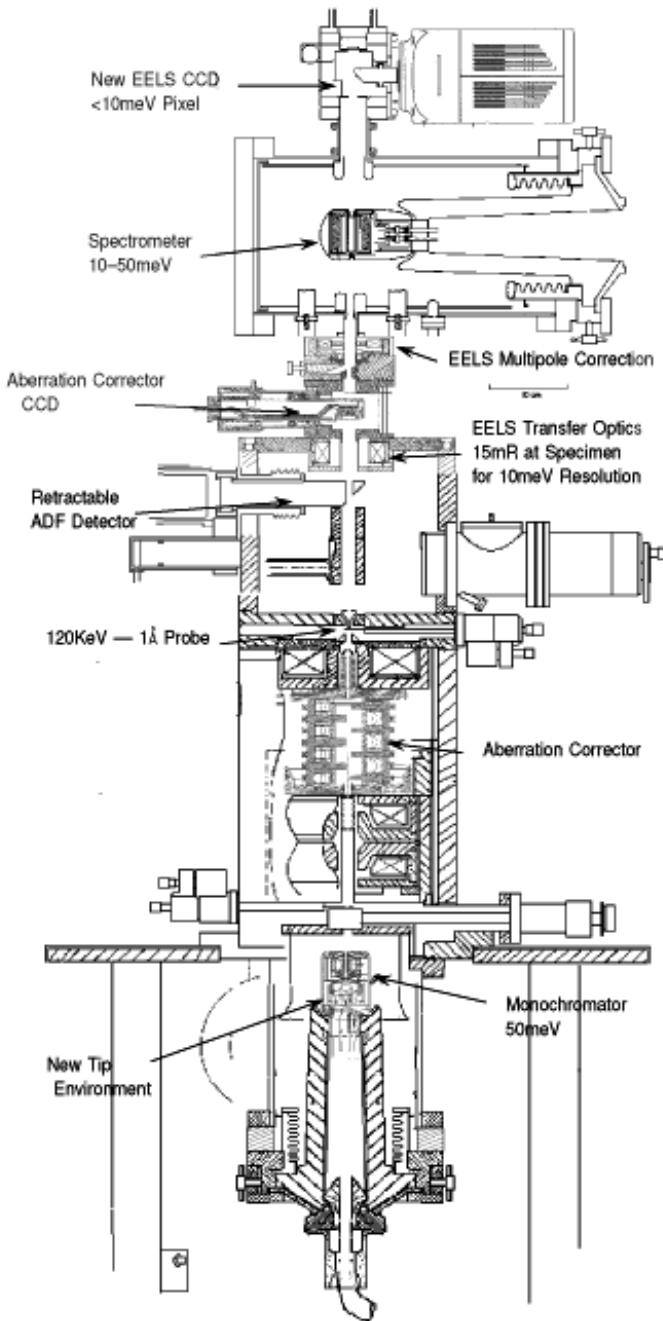
## Chapter 7

# RECENT DEVELOPMENTS

### 7.1 Scanning Transmission Electron Microscopy

In Section 1.6, we noted that a field-emission STEM was the first instrument to successfully image single atoms in the late 1960's. Several years later, a "dedicated STEM" (operating only in scanning mode) was manufactured by the Vacuum Generators Company in the UK. A cross-sectional diagram of a substantially modified version of this instrument (at IBM Watson Research Laboratories) is shown in Fig. 7-1. Because there is no need for a viewing screen inside the lens column, its electron gun is located at the bottom of the instrument (with some advantage in terms of mechanical stability) and the electron detectors are on top (making it easier to modify the detectors or add new ones).

Most STEM images are recorded in dark-field mode, using an annular dark-field (ADF) detector located just above the specimen. Its design is similar to that of a Robinson or solid-state BSE detector used in the SEM (Fig. 5-10) but it collects electrons that are *transmitted* through the specimen and scattered within a certain angular range ( $\theta_{\min}$  to  $\theta_{\max}$ ), determined by the inner and outer diameters. By making  $\theta_{\min}$  large, only large-angle (mainly elastic) scattering is collected. According to Eq. (4.15), its intensity is proportional to  $Z^2$ . Therefore the ADF image contains strong atomic-number contrast and not much diffraction contrast (most of the diffracted electrons have a scattering angle less than  $\theta_{\min}$  and pass through the central hole in the detector). Although the signal is weak, the annular detector design provides high collection efficiency, as all *azimuthal* angles of scattering are recorded (unlike the case of dark-field imaging in a conventional TEM).



*Figure 7-1.* Modified VG HB-501 STEM fitted with a gun monochromator, 120-kV Nion spherical-aberration corrector, ADF detector, and aberration-corrected electron spectrometer. Courtesy of Phil Batson, IBM Watson Research Laboratory, and Ondrej Krivanek, Nion Co.

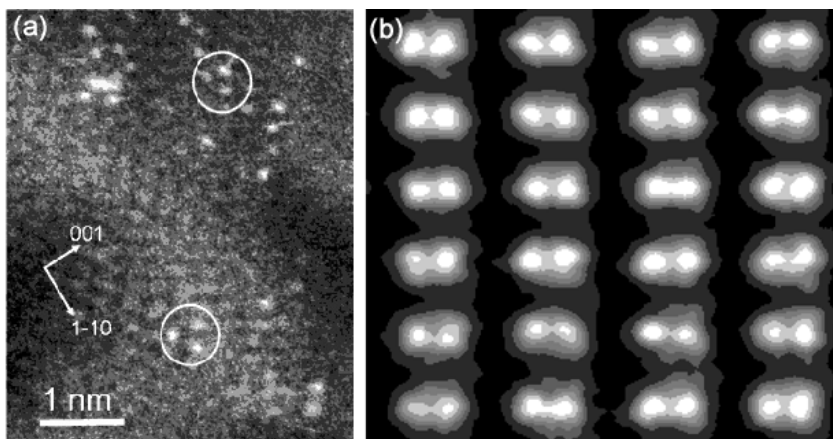


Figure 7-2. (a) ADF-STEM image of a catalyst specimen, showing individual Pt atoms on the surface of an alumina support; the circles indicate Pt<sub>3</sub> trimers. Courtesy of R.D. Adams and M. Amiridis, University of South Carolina, A. Borisevich and S. Pennycook, Oak Ridge National Laboratory. (b) Image of a silicon crystal recorded with the electron beam parallel to (112), showing pairs of atomic columns 0.078 nm apart. Courtesy of Matthew F. Chisholm, ORNL, reprinted with permission from *Science* **305** (2004) 1741; copyright 2004 AAAS. Both of these images were recorded using the aberration-corrected VG603 STEM at ORNL.

Because the dedicated STEM has a field-emission source and a strongly excited objective lens (low  $C_s$ ), it can form a probe of diameter  $\approx 0.2$  nm, offering the possibility of single-atom resolution. One area of application has been the study of the structure of catalysts, which typically consist of very small metal particles on an oxide support; see Fig. 7-2a.

The STEM can also produce atomic-resolution images of crystalline specimens. If the specimen is oriented with a low-index crystal axis parallel to the incident beam, columns of atoms can be resolved (Fig. 7-2b), as in the case of phase-contrast TEM images. However, the ADF detector provides an amplitude (scattering-contrast) signal that is relatively *insensitive* to the objective-lens focus; there are no contrast reversals (Section 4.9) and the image is more directly interpretable in terms of atomic coordinates.

As shown in Fig. 7-1, the STEM is usually fitted with an energy-loss spectrometer that forms a spectrum from electrons (with scattering angle up to  $\theta_{\min}$ ) that pass through a central hole in the ADF detector. This arrangement allows dark-field and energy-filtered bright-field images to be recorded simultaneously. Also, after recording an atomic-resolution ADF image, the electron probe can be set to a precisely known location on the specimen and the electron spectrometer used to provide elemental or fine-structure analysis with a spatial resolution down to the atomic level (Browning *et al.*, 1997).

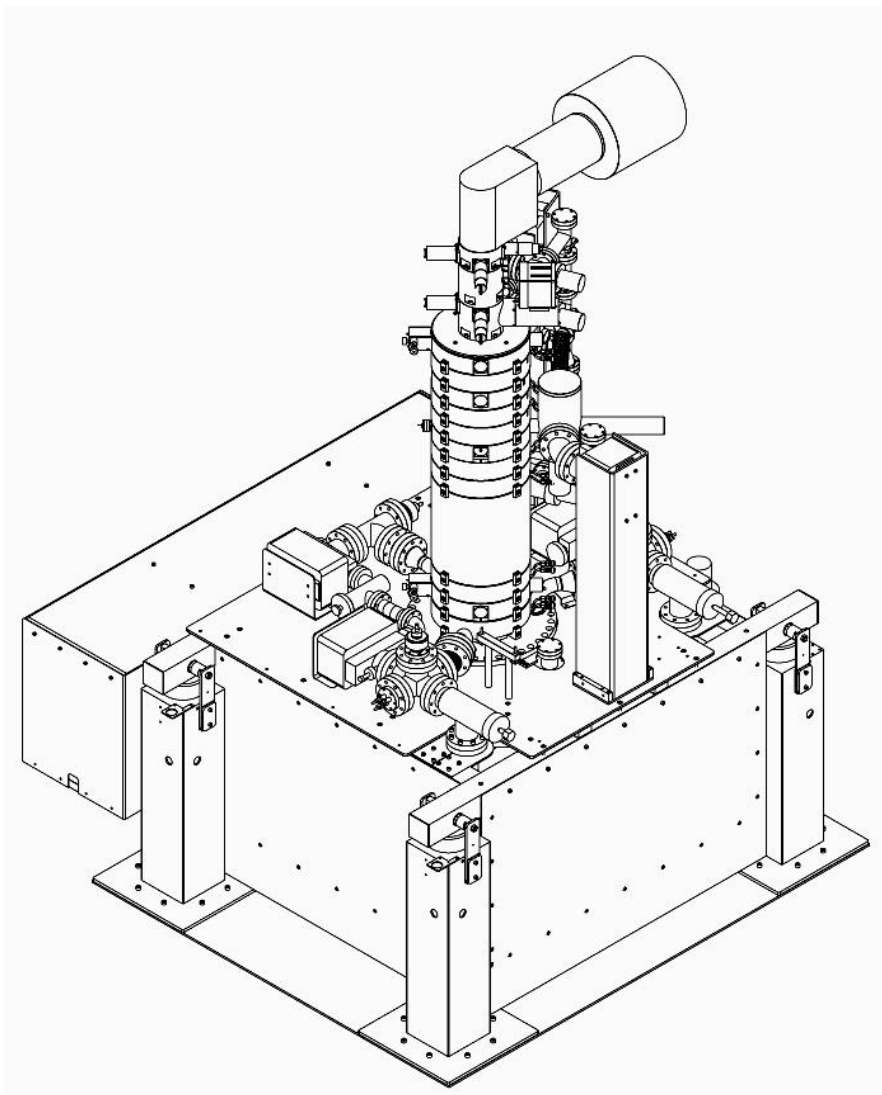
## 7.2 Aberration Correction

From analysis of the basic properties of electric and magnetic fields, the German scientist Otto Scherzer showed that a conventional electron lens (where the magnetic or electrostatic fields have axial symmetry) must suffer from spherical and chromatic aberration, with aberration coefficients that are *always positive*. Therefore, we cannot eliminate lens aberrations by careful shaping of the lens polepieces, unlike the situation in light optics where *aspherical* lenses can be fabricated with zero  $C_s$ . In addition, it is not possible (in *electron optics*) to design compound lenses in which axially-symmetric lens elements have positive and negative aberration coefficients, so that they compensate for each other.

Because of the practical incentive to achieve better resolution, physicists have for many years sought ways to circumvent Scherzer's rule. One option is to employ mirror optics. An **electrostatic mirror** involves an electrode connected to a potential more negative than that of the electron source. Before reaching the electrode, electrons are brought to rest and their trajectory is reversed. As a result of this reversal of path, the mirror has negative aberration coefficients and can be used as a compensating element. By assembling an electron-optical system containing electrostatic lenses and an electrostatic mirror, Rempfer *et al.* (1997) showed that both spherical and chromatic aberrations can be corrected, for angles up to 40 mrad. Although no TEM or SEM has made use of this principle, it is being applied to the **photoelectron microscope**, in which electrons released from a specimen (exposed to ultraviolet or x-ray radiation) are accelerated and focused to form an image.

It has also been known for many years that weak **multipole** lenses have the potential to correct for spherical aberration of an axially symmetric lens. Their construction is similar to that of a stigmator (Fig. 2-16), but in general there are  $n$  electrodes ( $n = 4$  for a quadrupole,  $n = 6$  for a sextupole,  $n = 8$  for an octupole). A mixture of quadrupoles and octupoles (or sextupoles) is required, and accurate alignment of each element is critical. With careful design, accurate machining, and computer control of the lens excitations, such correction has recently become feasible, and transmission electron microscopes that incorporate this form of aberration correction are being built. In Fig. 7-1, the field-emission STEM has been fitted with four quadrupole and three octupole lenses, which correct the spherical aberration of the probe-forming lenses and generate a scanning probe with a width

below 0.1 nm, as evidenced in Fig. 7-2b. A recent commercial design for an aberration-corrected dedicated STEM is shown in Fig. 7-3.



*Figure 7-3.* Nion UltraSTEM. The rectangular base houses a 200-kV cold field-emission gun. The column (diameter 28 cm) includes two condenser lenses, a C3/C5 aberration corrector that uses 16 quadrupoles, and 3 combined quadrupole/octupoles to correct both third and fifth order spherical aberration, an objective lens, and two projector lenses. It incorporates an ADF detector, retractable bright-field detector, CCD Ronchigram camera, and a Gatan magnetic-prism spectrometer (located on top of the column). The large rectangular box attached to the side of the gun houses circuitry generating tip and anode voltages and a high-voltage sensing (feedback) resistor. Courtesy of Nion Co.

Besides decreasing the probe size and improving the STEM image resolution, aberration correction allows an electron probe to have a larger convergence semi-angle without its diameter being increased by spherical aberration. In turn, this means higher probe current and larger signals from the ADF or XEDS detector, or the energy-loss spectrometer, allowing the possibility of elemental analysis with higher sensitivity. In fact, the current density in an aberration-corrected probe can exceed  $10^6$  A/cm<sup>2</sup>, high enough to cause radiation damage in many inorganic (as well as organic) materials. Because radiation damage cannot be completely avoided, this effect sets the ultimate practical limit to TEM spatial resolution and elemental sensitivity.

Aberration correction can also be applied to a conventional TEM, by adding a multipole corrector to the imaging system to correct for spherical aberration of the objective lens. But to optimize the instrument for analytical microscopy, a second  $C_s$ -corrector must be added to the illumination system to decrease the probe size and maximize the probe current.

Because the aberration of an objective lens depends on its focus setting, the currents in each multipole must be readjusted for every new specimen. In practice, this adjustment is achieved through computer control, based on the appearance of a “Ronchigram” (essentially an in-line Gabor hologram; see Section 7.4) recorded by a CCD camera placed after the specimen.

### 7.3 Electron-Beam Monochromators

The electron beam used in a TEM or SEM has an energy spread  $\Delta E$  in the range 0.3 eV to 1.5 eV, depending on the type of electron source, as summarized in Table 3.1. Because of chromatic aberration (which remains or is even increased after using multipoles to correct spherical aberration), this energy spread degrades the spatial resolution in both scanning and fixed-beam microscopy. It also broadens the peaks in an energy-loss spectrum, reducing the amount of fine structure that can be observed.

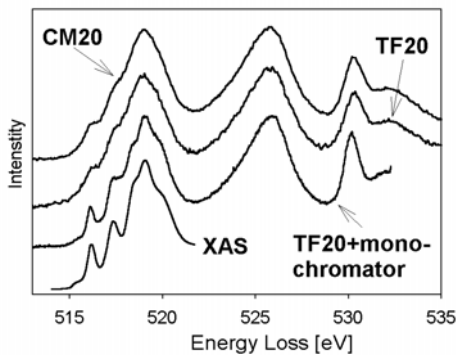
One solution to this problem is to use a **monochromator** in the illumination system. This device is essentially an *energy filter*, consisting of an electron spectrometer operated at a fixed excitation, followed by an energy-selecting slit that restricts the velocity range of the beam. The aim is to reduce  $\Delta E$  to below 0.2 eV, so with  $E_0 = 200$  keV the spectrometer must have an energy resolution and stability of 1 part in  $10^6$ . If the spectrometer were a magnetic prism, as discussed in Section 6.9, this requirement would place severe demands on the stability of the spectrometer and high-voltage power supplies. An easier option is to incorporate an energy filter into the electron gun, where the electrons have not yet acquired their final kinetic energy and the *fractional* energy resolution can be lower. Figure 7-1 shows

one type of gun monochromator, in this case a **Wien filter** in which a magnetic field  $B_x$  and an electric field  $E_y$  are applied perpendicular to the beam, such that they introduce equal and opposite forces on the electron. The net force is zero when

$$(-e)vB_x + (-e)E_y = 0 \quad (7.1)$$

Equation (7.1) is satisfied only for a single electron speed  $v$ ; faster or slower electrons are deflected to one side and removed by the energy-selecting slit. A convenient feature of the Wien filter is that the electrons allowed through it travel in a straight line, unlike a magnetic prism, which changes the direction of the optic axis.

Monochromators are expected to be useful for revealing additional fine structure in an energy-loss spectrum, as illustrated in Fig. 7-4. This fine structure can sometimes be used as a “fingerprint” to identify the chemical nature of very small volumes of material. In addition, good energy resolution is important for resolving energy losses below 5 eV, in order to measure the energy gap (between valence and conduction bands) in a semiconductor or insulator and to investigate energy levels within the gap, which may be associated with localized defects such as dislocations.



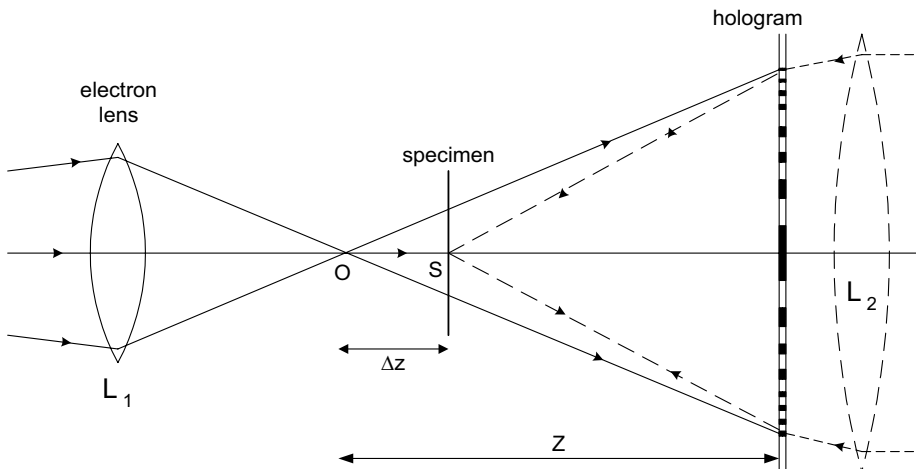
*Figure 7-4.* Part of the electron energy-loss spectrum recorded from a vanadium pentoxide sample using several FEI microscopes. The CM20 has a thermionic electron source, giving an energy spread of about 1.5 eV. The TF20 has a field-emission source and when fitted with a gun monochromator, it achieves an energy resolution below 0.2 eV, revealing additional fine structure just above the vanadium L-ionization threshold ( $\approx 515$  eV). Although the energy resolution obtained by x-ray absorption spectroscopy (using synchrotron radiation) is even better, the TEM offers greatly superior spatial resolution. From D.S. Su *et al.*, *Micron* **34** (2003) 235–238, courtesy of Elsevier Ltd. and F. Hofer, Technical University of Graz.



## 7.4 Electron Holography

Although the behavior of electrons can often be understood by treating them as particles, some properties, such as the distribution of intensity within an electron-diffraction pattern, require a wave description. But when an image or diffraction pattern is viewed (on a fluorescent screen) or photographed (using a film or CCD camera), only the intensity (or amplitude) of the electron wave is recorded; we lose all information about the *phase* of the wave that arrives at the recording plane. As we will see, this phase carries additional information about the electric and magnetic fields that may be present in the specimen.

In holographic recording, electron or light waves coming from a sample are mixed with a **reference wave**. The resulting interference pattern (called a **hologram**) is sensitive to the phase of the wave at the *exit surface of the specimen*. So even though it is *recorded* only as an intensity distribution, the hologram contains both amplitude and phase information, which can be extracted by means of a **reconstruction** procedure. This procedure involves interference between the holographic record and a *reconstruction wave*, not necessarily of the original wavelength or even the same type of radiation.



*Figure 7-5.* In-line electron hologram formed from spherical waves emanating from a small source  $O$  (formed by an electron lens  $L_1$ ), which interfere with spherical waves emitted from scattering points (such as  $S$ ) in the specimen. For reconstruction, a light-optical lens  $L_2$  focuses light onto the back (or front) of the hologram, which then focuses the transmitted (or reflected) light onto each point  $S$ , forming a magnified image of the specimen.

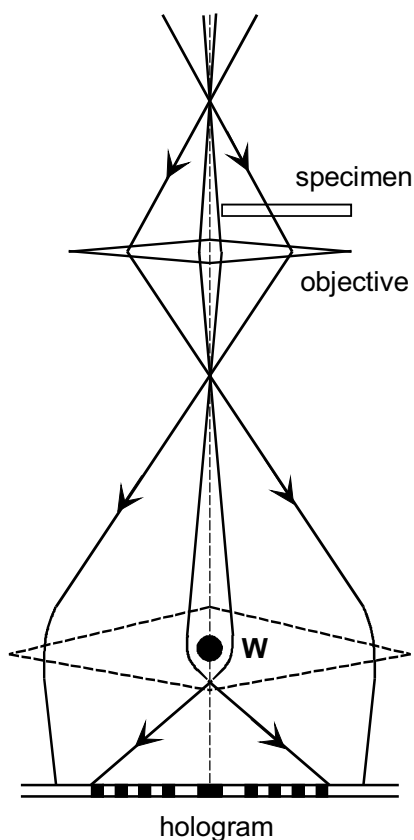
Besides having the same wavelength, the reference wave must have a fixed phase relationship with the wave that travels through the specimen. One means of achieving this is to have *both* waves originate from a small (ideally point) source, a distance  $\Delta z$  from the specimen; see Fig 7-5. This source can be produced by using a strong electron lens  $L_1$  to focus an electron beam into a small probe, as first proposed by Gabor (1948). If the specimen is very thin, some electrons are transmitted straight through the specimen and interfere with those that are scattered within it. Interference between transmitted and scattered waves produces a hologram on a nearby screen or photographic plate.

This hologram has some of the features of a **shadow image**, a projection of the specimen with magnification  $M \approx z/\Delta z$ . However, each scattering point  $S$  in the specimen emits spherical waves (similar to those centered on  $S$  in Fig. 7-5) that interfere with the spherical waves coming from the point source, so the hologram is also an interference pattern. For example, bright fringes are formed when there is constructive interference (where wavefronts of maximum amplitude coincide at the hologram plane). In the case of a *three-dimensional* specimen, scattering points  $S$  occur at different  $z$ -coordinates, and their relative displacements (along the  $z$ -axis) have an effect on the interference pattern. As a result, the hologram can record *three-dimensional* information, as its name is meant to suggest (holo = entire).

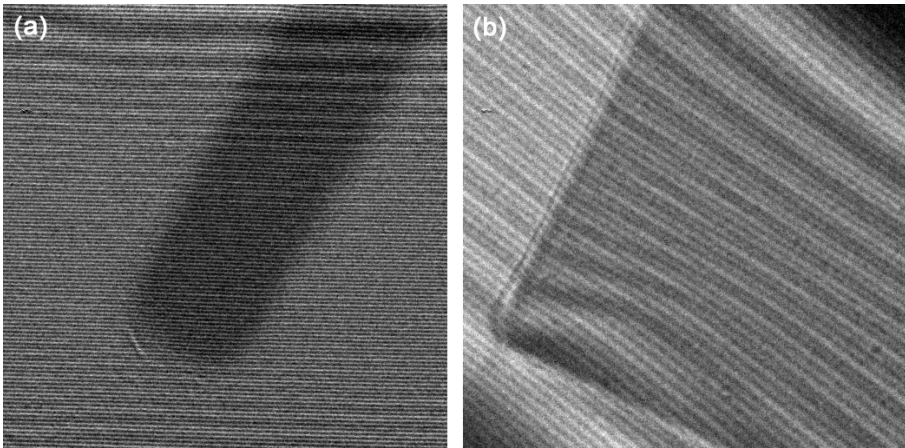
Reconstruction can be accomplished by using visible light of wavelength  $M\lambda$ , which reaches the hologram through the glass lens  $L_2$  in Fig. 7-5. The interference fringes recorded in the hologram act rather like a zone plate (or a diffraction grating), directing the light into a magnified image of the specimen at  $S$ , as indicated by the dashed rays in Fig. 7-5. Because  $M$  may be large (e.g.,  $10^5$ ), this reconstruction is best done in a separate apparatus. If the defects (aberrations, astigmatism) of the glass lens  $L_2$  match those of the electron lens  $L_1$ , the electron-lens defects are *compensated*, and so the resolution in the reconstructed image is not limited by those aberrations.

At the time when Gabor made his proposal, no suitable electron source was available; he demonstrated the holographic principle using only visible light. Nowadays, *light-optical* holography has been made into a practical technique by the development of laser sources of highly monochromatic radiation (small spread in wavelength, also described as high *longitudinal coherence*). In electron optics, a monochromatic source is one that emits electrons of closely the same kinetic energy (low energy spread  $\Delta E$ ). In addition, the electron source should have a very small diameter (giving high *lateral coherence*). As a result, the widespread use of electron holography had to await the commercial availability of the field-emission TEM.

There are now many alternative holographic schemes, the most popular being **off-axis holography** (Voelkl *et al.*, 1999). In this method, an **electron biprism** is used to combine the **object wave**, representing electrons that pass through the specimen, with a reference wave formed from electrons that pass beyond an edge of the specimen (Fig. 7-6). The biprism consists of a thin conducting wire ( $< 1 \mu\text{m}$  diameter) maintained at a positive potential (up to a few hundred volts), usually inserted at the selected-area-aperture plane of a field-emission TEM. The electric field of the biprism bends the electron trajectories (Fig.7-6) and produces a hologram containing sinusoidal fringes, running parallel to the wire, that are modulated by information about the specimen; see Fig. 7-7. Highly astigmatic illumination is used to maximize the size of the coherence patch where the interfering wavefronts overlap.



*Figure 7-6.* Principle of off-axis electron holography. Electrons that pass through the sample are combined with those of an off-axis beam that is attracted toward a positively biased wire *W*, whose axis runs perpendicular to the diagram. *W* is the electron-optical equivalent of a glass biprism, as indicated by the dashed lines.



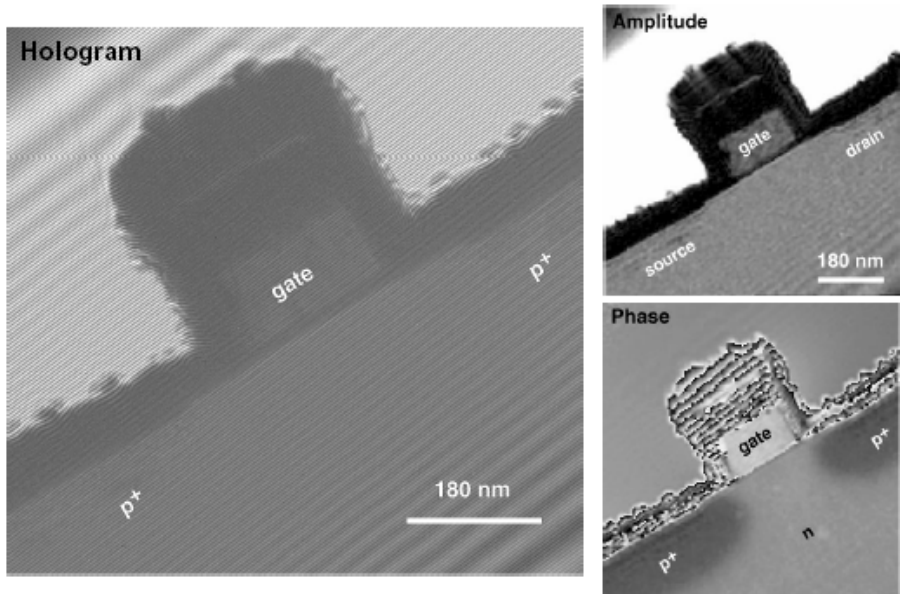
*Figure 7-7.* Off-axis low-magnification (objective lens off) electron holograms of a sub- $\mu\text{m}$  permalloy structure supported on a 50-nm-thick SiN membrane. Note the fringe bending corresponding to areas with strong change in electron phase (for example, near the edges of the permalloy film). Although some of this bending is electrostatic in nature (due to the “inner potential” of the permalloy), most of it results from the internal magnetization (change in magnetic potential). The holograms were recorded using a JEOL 3000F field-emission TEM. Courtesy of M. Malac, M. Schofield, and Y. Zhu, Brookhaven National Laboratory.

Rather than using *optical* reconstruction, it is more convenient to transfer the hologram (using a CCD camera) into a computer, which can simulate the effect of optical processing by running a program that reconstructs the complex image wave. This process involves calculating the two-dimensional Fourier transform of the hologram intensity (essentially its frequency spectrum) and selecting an off-axis portion of the transform, representing modulation of the sinusoidal fringe pattern. Taking an *inverse* Fourier transform of this selected data yields two images: the real and imaginary parts of the processed hologram (representing the cosine and sine harmonics), from which the phase and amplitude of the electron exit wave (i.e., the wave at the exit surface of the specimen) can be calculated. The phase image is particularly valuable, as it can reveal changes in magnetic or chemical potential in the specimen.

In most ferromagnetic specimens, fringe shifts are mainly due to changes in *magnetic* potential associated with the internal magnetic field. Electron holography therefore supplements the information obtained from Fresnel and Foucault imaging and in fact is more quantitative.

In non-magnetic specimens, where only electrostatic effects contribute to the shift of the holographic fringes, the phase image can be processed to yield a map of the local (chemical) potential; see Fig. 7-8. Electron

holography could therefore become a valuable technique for examining the distribution of electrically-active dopants in semiconductors, with high spatial resolution (Rau et al., 1999).



*Figure 7-8.* Off-axis electron hologram of a p-MOS transistor, together with the derived amplitude and phase images. In the phase image, the two darker areas represent heavy  $p^+$  doping of the silicon; the abrupt fringes represent phase increments greater than  $2\pi$  radian. The cross-sectional specimen was prepared by mechanical polishing followed by Ar-ion milling. Reproduced from: Mapping of process-induced dopant distributions by electron holography, by W-D Rau and A. Orchowski, *Microscopy and Microanalysis* (February 2004) 1–8, courtesy of Cambridge University Press and the authors.

## 7.5 Time-Resolved Microscopy

As we have seen, electron microscopes have been gradually perfected so as to provide imaging with spatial resolution down to atomic dimensions. Now their resolution is being improved in the fourth (time) dimension.

A time resolution of a few milliseconds is easily achieved by operating an SEM at video rate (at least 30 frame/s), or by adding a video-rate CCD camera to the TEM, and recording a sequence of images onto magnetic tape or in a computer-storage medium. One application has been the study of chemical reactions, where the specimen reacts with a surrounding gas in an environmental SEM or where a TEM specimen is mounted in a special

holder containing an **environmental cell**. To allow adequate gas pressure inside, the latter employs small differential-pumping apertures or very thin carbon-film “windows” above and below the specimen.

Recent efforts have shortened the time resolution to the sub-picosecond region. One example (Lobastov *et al.*, 2005) is a 120-keV TEM fitted with a lanthanum hexaboride cathode from which electrons are released, not by thermionic emission but via the photoelectric effect. The LaB<sub>6</sub> is illuminated by the focused beam from an ultrafast laser that produces short pulses of UV light, repeated at intervals of 13 ns and each less than 100 femtoseconds long (1 fs = 10<sup>-15</sup> s). The result is a pulsed electron beam, similar to that used for stroboscopic imaging in the SEM (see page 141) but with much shorter pulses. As the electron is a charged particle, incorporating many of them into the same pulse would result in significant Coulomb repulsion between the electrons so that they no longer travel independently, as needed to focus them with electromagnetic lenses. This problem is circumvented by reducing the laser-light intensity, so that each pulse generates (on average) only one electron. Although the laser pulses themselves can be used for ultrafast imaging, the image resolution is then limited by the photon wavelength.

One goal of such **ultrafast microscopy** is to study the atomic-scale dynamics of chemical reactions; it is known that the motion of individual atoms in a molecular structure occurs on a femtosecond time scale. Another aim is to obtain structural information from beam-sensitive (e.g., biological) specimens before they become damaged by the electron beam (Neutze *et al.*, 2000).



## Appendix

### MATHEMATICAL DERIVATIONS

#### A.1 The Schottky Effect

The reduction  $\Delta\phi$  in the surface-barrier height with applied electric field (Schottky effect) can be calculated by first considering the case where the extraction field is zero. When an electron leaves the conducting cathode, it generates (within the vacuum) its own electric field, which arrives perpendicular to the surface of the conductor and induces an equal and opposite charge  $+e$  that is distributed over the cathode surface (Fig. A-1a). The field lines *outside* the cathode are the same as those generated by an electrostatic dipole, obtained by replacing the cathode by a point charge  $+e$  located at an equal distance  $z$  inside the surface; see Fig. A-1b. The electron therefore experiences an attractive force given by Coulomb's law:

$$F(z) = K (-e)(+e)/(2z)^2 \quad (\text{A.1})$$

in which  $K = 1/(4\pi\epsilon_0) = 9.0 \times 10^9 \text{ N m}^2 \text{ C}^{-2}$  is the Coulomb constant. The negative sign of  $F(z)$  indicates that the force acts in the  $-z$  direction, toward the surface.

With voltage applied to an extraction electrode, an additional field  $-E_e$  is created (in the  $-z$ -direction) that gives rise to a force  $F_e = -e(-E_e) = +eE_e$ . The positive sign of  $F_e$  denotes that this extraction force acts in the  $+z$  direction. The total force is therefore:

$$F = F(z) + F_e = -(K/4) (e^2/z^2) + e E_e \quad (\text{A.2})$$



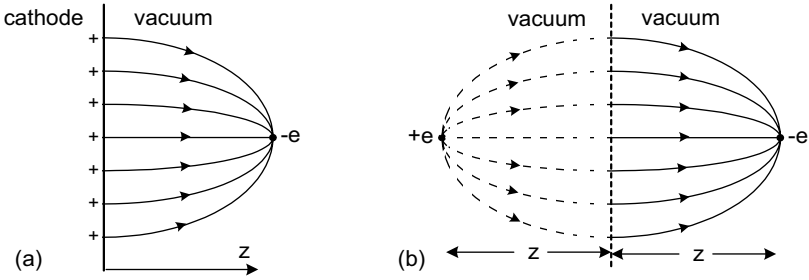


Figure A-1. (a) Electric field lines and surface-charge distribution produced by an electron located just outside the surface of a conductor. (b) Equivalent field lines produced by an electrostatic dipole operating in vacuum.

This total force can be written as  $F = (-e)E(z) = (-e)(-dV/dz)$  where  $E(z)$  is the total field and  $V$  is the corresponding electrostatic potential. The potential can therefore be obtained by integration of Eq. (A.2):

$$V = (1/e) \int F dz = (K/4) (e/z) + E_e z \quad (\text{A.3})$$

The potential energy  $\phi(z)$  of the electron is therefore:

$$\phi(z) = (-e)(V) = -(K/4) (e^2/z) - eE_e z \quad (\text{A.4})$$

and is represented by the dashed curve in Fig. 3-4 (page 63). The top of the potential-energy barrier corresponds to a coordinate  $z_0$  at which the slope  $d\phi/dz$  and therefore the force  $F$  are both zero. Substituting  $z = z_0$  and  $F = 0$  in Eq. (A.2) results in  $z_0^2 = (K/4)(e/E_e)$ , and substitution into Eq. (A.4) gives

$$\phi(z_0) = -e^{3/2} K^{1/2} E_e^{1/2} = -\Delta\phi \quad (\text{A.5})$$

From Eq. (3.1), the current density due to thermionic emission is now:

$$\begin{aligned} J_e &= A T^2 \exp[-(\phi - \Delta\phi) / kT] \\ &= A T^2 \exp(-\phi / kT) \exp(\Delta\phi / kT) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.6})$$

In other words, the applied field increases  $J_e$  by a factor of  $\exp(\Delta\phi/kT)$ . Taking  $E_e = 10^8$  V/m,  $\Delta\phi = 6.1 \times 10^{-20}$  J = 0.38 eV, and  $\exp(\Delta\phi/kT) = 11.5$  for  $T = 1800$  K. This accounts for the order-of-magnitude increase in current density  $J_e$  (see Table 3.2) for a ZrO-coated Schottky source compared to a LaB<sub>6</sub> source, which has a similar work function and operating temperature.

### A.2 Impact Parameter in Rutherford Scattering

Here we retrace Rutherford’s derivation of the relation between the impact parameter  $b$  and the scattering angle  $\theta$  , but replacing his incident alpha particle by an electron and assuming that the scattering angle is small (true for most electrons, if their incident kinetic energy is high). Figure A-2 shows the hyperbolic path of an electron deflected by the electrostatic field of an *unscreened* atomic nucleus. At any instant, the electron is attracted toward the nucleus with an electrostatic force given by Eq. (4.10):

$$F = K Z e^2 / r^2 \tag{A.7}$$

where  $K = 1/(4\pi\epsilon_0)$  as previously. During the electron trajectory, this force varies in both magnitude and direction; its net effect must be obtained by *integrating* over the path of the electron.

However, only the  $x$ -component  $F_x$  of the force is responsible for angular deflection and this component is

$$F_x = F \cos\beta = (KZe^2/r^2) \cos\beta \tag{A.8}$$

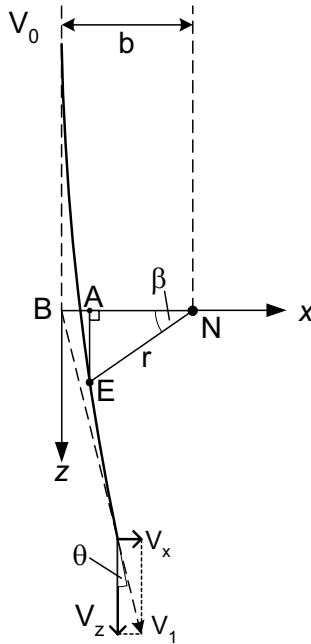


Figure A-2. Trajectory of an electron E with an impact parameter  $b$  relative to an unscreened atomic nucleus N, whose electrostatic field causes the electron to be deflected through an angle  $\theta$ , with a slight change in speed from  $v_0$  to  $v_1$  .

The variable  $\beta$  represents the *direction* of the force, relative to the  $x$ -axis (Fig. A-2). From the geometry of triangle ANE, we have:  $r \cos \beta = AN \approx b$  if  $\theta$  is small, where  $b$  is the impact parameter of the initial trajectory. Substituting for  $r$  in Eq. (A.8) gives:

$$(KZe^2/b^2)\cos^3 \beta = F_x = m(dv_x/dt) \quad (\text{A.9})$$

where  $m = \gamma m_0$  is the *relativistic* mass of the electron, and we have applied Newton's second law of motion in the  $x$ -direction. The final  $x$ -component  $v_x$  of electron velocity (resulting from the deflection) is obtained by integrating Eq. (A.9) with respect to time, over the whole trajectory, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} v_x &= \int (dv_x/dt) dt = \int [(dv_x/dt)/(dz/dt)] dz \\ &= \int [(dv_x/dt)/v_z] (dz/d\beta) d\beta \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.10})$$

In Eq. (A.10), we first replace integration over time by integration over the  $z$ -coordinate of the electron, and then by integration over the angle  $\beta$ . Because  $z = (EN) \tan \beta \approx b \tan \beta$ , basic calculus gives  $dz/d\beta \approx b(\sec^2 \beta)$ . Using this relationship in Eq. (A.10) and making use of Eq. (A.9) to substitute for  $dv_x/dt$ ,  $v_x$  can be written entirely in terms of  $\beta$  as the only variable:

$$v_x = \int [(F_x/m)/v_z] b(\sec^2 \beta) d\beta = \int [KZe^2/(bm v_z) \cos^3 \beta] \sec^2 \beta d\beta \quad (\text{A.11})$$

From the vector triangle in Fig. A-2 we have:  $v_z = v_1 \cos \theta \approx v_1$  for small  $\theta$  and also, for small  $\theta$ ,  $v_1 \approx v_0$ , as elastic scattering causes only a very small fractional change in kinetic energy of the electron. Because  $\sec \beta = 1/\cos \beta$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} v_x &= \int [KZe^2/(bm v_0)] \cos \beta d\beta = [KZe^2/(bm v_0)] [\sin \beta] \\ &= 2 [KZe^2/(bm v_0)] \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.12})$$

where we have taken the limits of integration to be  $\beta = -\pi/2$  (electron far from the nucleus and approaching it) and  $\beta = +\pi/2$  (electron far from the nucleus and receding from it).

Finally, we obtain the scattering angle  $\theta$  from parallelogram (or triangle) of velocity vectors in Fig. A-2, using the fact that  $\theta \approx \tan \theta = v_x/v_z \approx v_x/v_0$  to give:

$$\theta \approx 2KZe^2/(bm v_0^2) = 2KZe^2/(\gamma m_0 v_0^2 b) \quad (\text{A.13})$$

Using a non-relativistic approximation for the kinetic energy of the electron ( $E_0 \approx mv^2/2$ ), Eq. (A.13) becomes:

$$\theta \approx K Z e^2 / (E_0 b) \quad (\text{A.14})$$

## REFERENCES

- Binnig, G., Rohrer, H., Gerber, C., and Weibel, E., 1982, Surface studies by scanning tunneling microscopy. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **49**:57–60.
- Browning, N.D., Wallis, D.J., Nellist, P.D., and Pennycook, S.J., 1997, EELS in the STEM: Determining the properties of materials on an atomic scale. *Micron* **28**:333–348.
- Brydson, R., 2001, *Electron Energy Loss Spectroscopy*. BIOS, Oxford.
- Davison, C. and Germer, L.H., 1927, Diffraction of electrons by a crystal of nickel. *Phys. Rev.* **30**:705–740.
- Egerton, R.F., 1996, *Electron Energy-Loss Spectroscopy in the Electron Microscope*, 2nd ed. Springer, New York.
- Gabor, D., 1948, A new microscopic principle. *Nature* **161**:777–778.
- Gauvin, R., Hovington, P., Drouin, D., Couture, A. R., Horny, P., and Demers, H., 2001, CASINO: a Monte Carlo Simulation of electron trajectory in solids. Available from <http://www.gel.usherb.ca/casino/>
- Glaeser, W., 1952, *Foundations of Electron Optics* (in German). Springer-Verlag, Vienna.
- Goodhew, P.J., 1985, *Thin Foil Preparation for Electron Microscopy*, Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- Hashimoto, H., Endoh, H., Tanji, T., Ono, A., and Watanabe, E., 1977, Direct observation of fine structure within images of atoms in crystals by transmission electron microscopy. *J. Phys. Soc. Japan* **42**:179.
- Joy, D.C., and Joy, C.S., 1996, Low-voltage scanning electron microscopy. *Micron* **27**:247–263.
- Knoll, M., and Ruska, E., 1932, Contribution to geometrical electron optics (in German). *Annalen der Physik* **5**:607–661.
- Lobastov, M., Srinivasan, R., and Zewail, A.H., 2005, Four-dimensional ultrafast electron microscopy. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* **102**:7069–7073.
- Maxwell, J. C., 1858, On the general laws of optical instruments. *Quarterly Journal of Pure and Applied Mathematics* **2**:233–246.
- Muller, D.A., and Grazul, J., 2001, Optimizing the environment for sub-0.2nm scanning transmission electron microscopy. *J. Electron Microsc.* **50**:219–226.
- Neuhausler, U., Abend, S., Jacobsen, C., and G. Lagaly, G., 1999, Soft x-ray spectro-microscopy on solid-stabilized emulsions. *Colloid. Polym. Sci.* **277**:719–726.

- Neutze, R., Wouts, R., van der Spoel, D., Weckert, E., and Hajdu, J., 2000, Potential for biomolecular imaging with femtosecond X-ray pulses. *Nature* **406**:752–757.
- Rau, W.D., Schwander, P., Baumann, F.H., Hoepfner, W., and Ourmazd, A., 1999, Two-dimensional mapping of the electrostatic potential in transistors by electron holography. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **82**:2614–2617.
- Reimer, L., 1997, *Transmission Electron Microscopy*, 4th edition, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Reimer, L., 1998, *Scanning Electron Microscopy*, 2nd edition. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg.
- Rempfer, G.F., Delage, D.N., Skoczlas, W.P. and Griffith, O.H., 1997, Simultaneous correction of spherical and chromatic aberrations with an electron mirror: an optical achromat. *Microscopy and Microanalysis* **3**:14–27.
- Shindo, D., and Oikawa, T., 2002, *Analytical Electron Microscopy for Materials Science*. Springer, London.
- Thomson, G.P., 1927, Diffraction of cathode rays by thin films of platinum. *Nature* **120**:802.
- Voekl, E., Allard, L.F., and Joy, D.C., 1999, *Introduction to Electron Holography*. Springer, New York.
- Williams, D.B., and Carter, C.B., 1996, *Transmission Electron Microscopy*, Springer, New York.
- Zhang, H., 2002, Transmission electron microscopy for the semiconductor industry. *Micron* **33**:517–525.
- Zwyorkin, V.K., Hillier, J. and Snyder, R.L., 1942, A scanning electron microscope. *ASTM Bull.* **117**:15.

# INDEX

- Aberrations, 3, 28
  - axial, 44
  - chromatic, 33, 48
  - correction of, 180
  - spherical, 33, 44
- Acceleration of electrons, 67
- AEM, 21, 155
- Astigmatism, 51, 145
- Atomic-force microscope, 24
- Airlock, 76
- Alignment,
  - of multipoles, 180
  - of TEM, 12, 40, 75
- Amorphous specimens, 100
- Analytical microscopy, 155
- Anode plate, 67
- Aperture,
  - condenser, 72
  - of the eye, 3
  - pressure-differential, 149
  - selected-area, 83
  - SEM objective, 147
  - TEM objective, 80
- Areal density, 98, 166
- Artifacts of image 23, 24, 148
- Astigmatism,
  - axial, 51
  - SEM, 145
  - TEM condenser, 74
  - TEM objective, 82, 116
- Atom,
  - Bohr model, 155
  - Rutherford model, 93
- Auger electron, 166, 171
- Autobias, 61
- Axial symmetry, 34, 36
- Azimuthal angle, 51, 34, 177
- Back-focal plane, 32, 80
- Backscattering, 129, 17
- Backstreaming, 92
- Bend contour, 114
- Biological TEM, 79
- Biological tissue, 102, 76, 15
- Biprism, 185
- Bloch waves, 115
- Boersch effect, 67
- Bohr radius, 155
- Bragg reflection, 106
- Bremsstrahlung x-rays, 20

- Bright-field image, 100
- Brightness, 65
  - conservation of, 66, 72
- Camera length, 110
- Cathode material, 60
- Cathode-ray tube, 34, 127
- Cathodoluminescence, 134
- CCD camera, 86
- Charging effects, 147
- Cleavage, 120
- Coefficient,
  - backscattering, 137
  - chromatic, 51
  - spherical-aberration, 45
- Coherence, 185
- Coma, 54
- Condenser aperture, 74, 72
- Condenser lenses, 70
- Condenser-objective lens, 79
- Contamination, 92, 82, 152
- Confusion,
  - Airy disk of, 4
  - aberration disk, 33, 47, 49
  - disk of least, 46
  - focusing disk of, 28
- Contrast,
  - atomic-number, 101
  - diffraction, 106
  - light-microscope, 6
  - mass-thickness, 101
  - phase, 115
  - scattering, 101, 80
  - thickness-gradient, 104
  - topographical, 131–148
- Convergence angle, 66, 72
- Cornea, 2
- Coulomb interaction, 93
- Cross section for scattering, 97
- Crossover, 71
- Curvature of field, 29, 55
- Dedicated STEM, 19, 177
- Depth of field,
  - in TEM, 88, 55
  - in SEM, 145, 18
- Depth of focus,
  - in TEM, 87
- Defects,
  - crystal, 14, 112, 122, 141
  - lens, 27, 30, 44, 185
- Detector,
  - ADF, 177
  - Everhart-Thornley, 135
  - in-lens, 136
  - Robinson, 138
  - solid-state, 138
  - x-ray, 161, 168, 9
- Diaphragm,
  - of the eye, 3
  - TEM condenser, 72
  - TEM objective, 80
- Diffraction,
  - light-optical, 3
  - electron, 106, 11
- Diffraction contrast, 108
- Diffraction pattern, 108
- Dark-field image, 108
- Dead time, 164
- Disk of confusion, 4, 28, 33
- Disk of least confusion, 46
- Dislocations, 14, 112, 183
- Dispersion,
  - electron, 172
  - photon, 33, 142, 161, 168
- Distortion, 28, 54
- Drift,
  - beam-current, 61
  - high-voltage, 70, 43, 49
  - illumination, 75
  - specimen, 75, 77, 78
  - STM, 24
- Dynamics of scattering, 97

- EELS, 172
- Electromagnetic spectrum,
  - visible region, 2
  - ultraviolet region, 8
  - x-ray region, 9
- Electron,
  - backscattered, 128
  - penetration depth, 129
  - primary, 17
  - secondary, 17, 128
- Electron gun, 58
- Electron range, 129
- Electron volt (eV), 5, 67
- Electron source, 65
  - virtual, 71
- Elemental map, 143, 174
- Emission of electrons,
  - field, 62
  - Schottky, 62, 191
  - thermionic, 58
- Energy,
  - Fermi, 58
  - vacuum, 58
- Energy loss, 95, 172
- Energy spread, 48, 182
- EPMA, 169
- Escape depth, 131
- Etching, 7, 122
- Extinction distance, 115
  
- Feedback, 22, 61, 70
- FIB machine, 122
- Field, depth of, 88, 145
- Field emission, 19
- Field of view, 6
- Fluorescence yield, 166
- Flyback, 127
- Focal length, 32, 41
- Focusing,
  - dynamic, 147
  - ideal, 27
  - magnetic lens, 41
  - Focusing power, 41
  - Fourier transform, 187
  - Fresnel fringe, 116
  - Fringing field, 39
- Gaussian image plane, 44
- Gun, electron, 57
  
- High-voltage generator, 68
- Hologram, 184
- Human vision, 2
- Hysteresis effects, 82, 111
  
- Impact parameter, 97, 191
- Ionization edge, 173
- Illumination conditions, 72
- Illumination shift and tilt, 75
- Illumination system, 57
- Image,
  - atomic-column, 179
  - backscattered, 137
  - CL, 141
  - cross-sectional, 124
  - definition, 27
  - EBIC, 139
  - Foucault, 119
  - Lorentz, 118
  - plan-view, 124
  - real, 2, 33
  - retinal, 2
  - secondary-electron, 131
  - specimen-current, 139
  - shadow, 185
  - single-atom, 20
  - stroboscopic, 141
  - virtual, 33
  - voltage-contrast, 141
- Imaging lenses, 57, 78
- Immersion lens, 8, 43, 78
- Impact parameter, 97, 193
- Interaction volume, 129
- Inelastic scattering, 96



- Inner-shell ionization, 174, 20
- Iris of the eye, 3
- k*-factor, 166
- Kinematics of scattering, 93
- Lattice, 106
- Lattice parameter, 110
- Lens,
  - convex, 30
  - diverging, 43
  - eye, 3
  - einzel, 35
  - electrostatic, 34
  - immersion, 8, 43
  - magnetic, 35
  - multipole, 180
  - quadrupole, 54, 52, 173
  - SEM, 125, 146
  - TEM condenser, 70
  - TEM imaging, 78
- Lithography, 151
- Lorentzian function, 41
- Magnetic force, 35
- Magnification, 28
  - angular, 4
  - empty, 6
  - minimum, 5
  - SEM, 128
  - TEM, 83
- Mass-thickness, 129, 101
- Maxwell,
  - imaging rules, 27, 127
- Microscope,
  - atomic-force, 24
  - biological, 6, 79
  - compound, 5
  - electron, 11
  - high-voltage, 15
  - metallurgical, 7
  - photoelectron, 180
  - scanning electron, 17
  - scanning-tunneling, 21
  - STEM, 7, 11
- Miller indices, 110
- Misalignment, 40
- Monochromator, 182
- Monte Carlo calculations, 130
- Multichannel analyzer, 163
- Nanoprobe, 79, 126
- Nanotechnology, 153
- Noise,
  - image, 128, 134, 136, 140
  - in XEDS, 165, 160, 162
- O-rings, 40
- Objective aperture, 82
- Objective lens, 78, 126
- Objective stigmator, 82
- Optics,
  - electron, 34
  - geometrical, 32
  - ion, 43
  - physical, 32
  - x-ray, 9, 152
- Organelles, 15
- Paraxial rays, 30
- Phosphor screen, 85, 142
- Photographic recording, 85
- Photomultiplier tube, 134
- Pixels, 128
- Plane,
  - back-focal, 32
  - principal, 32, 80
- Plasmon excitation, 173
- Point resolution, 47
- Poisson statistics, 99
- Polepieces, 39
- Polycrystalline solid, 96
- Post-field, 79
- Pre-field, 78

- Principal plane, 32, 80
- Probe,
  - electron, 17, 126
  - scanning, 21
- Prism
  - glass, 30
  - magnetic, 172
- Pulse-height analysis, 163
- Pump,
  - cryo, 91
  - diffusion, 89
  - ion, 90
  - rotary, 88
  - turbomolecular, 90
- Pupil of the eye, 3
  
- Quantum number, 155
- Quadrupole, 52, 54, 173
  
- Raster scanning, 17, 126
- Radiation damage, 151, 182
- Ray diagram, 32, 34
- Rayleigh criterion, 4, 81
- Refractive index, 8, 30
- Relativistic mass, 68
- Replica, 103
- Resist, 151
- Resistor,
  - bias, 61, 70
  - feedback, 69
- Resolution,
  - of eye, 5
  - of light microscope, 6
  - of retina, 4
  - of SEM, 144, 125, 126
  - of TEM, 82, 180, 182
- Richardson law, 59
- Ripple, 43, 49, 69
- Ronchigram, 182
- Rotation angle of image, 42
- Rutherford scattering, 93, 193
- Rydberg energy, 155
  
- Saturated filament, 62
- Scanning,
  - digital, 127
  - raster, 126, 17
- Scattering, 93
  - angular distribution, 97
  - cross section, 97
  - elastic, 96
  - inelastic, 96, 49
- Scattering contrast, 80
- Scintillator, 134
- Secondary electrons, 17
- Screen,
  - SEM display, 128
  - TEM viewing, 85
- Screening, 99
- SEM, 17, 125
  - environmental, 149
  - low-voltage, 149
- SE1 component, 143
- Shadowing, 104, 136
- Single scattering, 99
- Spatial resolution,
  - of the retina, 4
  - of the eye, 5
  - of a light microscope, 6
- Specimen,
  - amorphous, 100
  - cross-sectional, 124
  - insulating, 148
  - polycrystalline, 96
  - single-crystal, 112
  - TEM thickness, 101, 88
- Specimen preparation,
  - SEM, 147
  - TEM, 119
- Specimen stage, 75, 57
- Spectroscopy,
  - Auger, 171
  - energy-loss, 172
  - x-ray, 161, 168
- Staining, 6, 15, 101

- Stacking fault, 114
- Stage,
  - side-entry, 76
  - top-entry, 77
- STEM, 18, 177
- Steradian, 65
- Stigmator, 52
  - condenser, 74
  - objective, 82, 145
  - SEM, 145
- STM, 21
- Surface replica, 103
- Symmetry, axial, 34–39
- Symmetry, crystal, 112
- Synchrotron source, 10
  
- TEM,
  - history, 11
  - construction, 57
- Thickness fringes, 114
- Thickness measurement, 174
- Thin-film deposition, 122
- Thin-lens approximation, 32
- Thinning of specimens, 121
- Topographic contrast,
  - in SEM, 131
  - in STM, 22
- Tunneling, 21, 63
  
- Ultrafast microscopy, 188
- Ultramicrotome, 101, 120
- Unit cell, 110
- Units of length, 1
  
- Vacancy clusters, 114
- Vacuum system, 88
- Viewing screen, 85
  
- Water window, 10
- Wavelength,
  - of electrons, 11, 117
  - of light, 2
- Wehnelt electrode, 61
- Wien filter, 183
- Work function, 58
- Working distance, 143
  
- X-ray,
  - bremsstrahlung, 160
  - characteristic, 158
- X-ray microscope, 9
- X-ray spectroscopy, 158, 143
- XEDS, 161
- XWDS, 168
  
- Y-modulation, 25
- Yield,
  - backscattering, 137
  - fluorescence, 166
  - secondary-electron, 131
  - total-electron, 148
  
- Z-contrast, 101
- ZAF correction, 167
- Zero-loss peak, 173
- Zone plate, 9, 152